

看迪士尼电影

超能陆战队 附赠MP3下载与二维码扫听

生动的 口语表达

地道的 英语发音

详细的 语法知识点

第87届奥斯卡"最佳动画长片"奖

迪士尼正版授权, 跟电影主人公学地道英文, 让你的学习更加生动有趣!





权威正版 选材地道

本书由华特·迪士尼公司官方授权,所选素材权威、正版,均来自迪士尼2014年力作《超能陆战队》。40段电影对白,跟真正的外国人学原汁原味的英文!

生动有趣 寓教于乐

本书精选了迪士尼电影《超能陆战队》中最实用的40个场景,带你重温经典情节。将学习融入电影情节之中,在欢乐的气氛中巩固和记忆,让你的学习变得更加生动有趣!

内容多样 讲解细致

打造全新的英语学习方法,集听力、口语、语法学习于一体,更有多重练习强化巩固所学知识。配合电影使用,效果加倍。即使你是零基础的英语学习者也能轻松晋升为英语高手。

超值MP3 发音纯正

外籍专家亲自录制的MP3音频,让母语外教带你进入纯正英语熏陶的世界,像电影主人公一样完美发声!



看迪士尼电影

學英文

超能陆战队

附赠MP3下载与二维码扫听



美国迪士尼公司 著龙 微 唐婷婷 编

● 華東 碑工大學出版社

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

看迪士尼电影学英文.超能陆战队(附赠mp3下载与二维码扫听)/美国迪士尼公司著;龙微,唐婷婷编.——上海:华东理工大学出版社,2016.8 (迪士尼丛书)

ISBN 978-7-5628-4596-6

I.①看… Ⅱ.①美… ②龙… ③唐… Ⅲ.①英语-口语 IV.①H319.9

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字 (2016) 第063581号

看迪士尼电影学英文·超能陆战队

(附赠MP3下载与二维码扫听)

项目统筹 戎 炜

责任编辑 黄 娜

装帧设计 肖祥德

出版发行 华东理工大学出版社有限公司

地址: 上海市梅陇路130号, 200237

电话: (021)64250306

网址: www.ecustpress.cn

邮箱: zongbianban@ecustpress.cn

印 刷 上海雅昌艺术印刷有限公司

开 本 890mm×1240mm 1/32

印 张 8

字 数 283千字

版 次 2016年8月第1版

印 次 2016年8月第1次

定 价 45.00元

^{© 2016} Disney Enterprises, Inc. All rights reserved.



学习英语的方式和素材都很丰富,许多人也有一定的英语水平,然而在实际使用中,许多人却发现很难理解外国人说出的句子,而自己的表达也比较中式,虽然能被听懂,但总觉得不是最理想的。

这主要是因为我们以一种脱离环境的方式在学习,单靠书本上死板的知识,只能学到最基础的部分,但外国人在生活中是如何沟通的?他们最常用的句子是什么?我们却不得而知。而且离开语境,学习效果会大打折扣,动力也会大大降低。

如果你想说一口地道的英文,电影台词是非常好的素材。跟着电影学英文,不但可以解决没有语境的问题,还能提高听说能力。电影台词中包含着大量地道说法,而这正是外国人每天都在用的表达。然而对于许多人来说,面对大量的台词,要想从中选出最值得学习的部分需要花费大量时间和精力。因此,我们跟迪士尼合作,选择了迪士尼最经典、最热门的电影推出这系列图书,希望帮助大家解决上述问题。

本系列图书特别聘请了Disney English外教Rhea Thrasher 进行录音,发音标准、地道;语速适中,可供你反复聆听、跟读与模仿。











原汁原味电影情景,身临其境全面提升

本书全部台词都来自电影《超能陆战队》,你不但可以 欣赏到电影的精彩情节,还能学到最地道的英语知识。我们 不但为你讲解台词里最实用、最流行的语句,还为你总结了 语法和句型的知识,让你把所有重点内容都学到。

精心设置练习,边学边练帮助更好掌握

为了检验学习效果,我们针对不同的知识点设置了不同 类型的练习题,认真做这些题目,能帮你快速掌握这些实用 的英语表达。

根据场景拓展相关口语和文化背景知识

根据每个场景的话题,我们还会再补充一些相关知识, 比如外国人在这个情景下可能使用的句子,或者是西方人的 一些文化习俗,让你对该情景能有更全面的理解。

Contents _{目录}

Unit 01		Total Annihilation — Yama 1 阎王完胜
Unit 02		Angry Yama 7 惹怒阎王
Unit 03	- The second	Aunt Cass's Love 13 卡斯阿姨的爱
Unit 04		Welcome to the Nerd Lab 19 欢迎来到书呆子实验室
Unit 05		Meet New Friends 25 认识新朋友
Unit 06		The Science Enthusiast—Fred 31 科学狂魔: 弗雷德
Unit 06 Unit 07		= 6
		科学狂魔: 弗雷德 Meeting Baymax for the First Time 37
Unit 07		科学狂魔: 弗雷德 Meeting Baymax for the First Time 37 初见大白 A Walking Marshmallow 43



He's So Tense 61 Unit 11 他太紧张了 Break a Leg 67 Unit 12 祝你成功 My Microbots 73 Unit 13 我的微型机器人 Look Forward to Seeing You in Class 79 Unit 14 期待课上相见 Thanks for not Giving Up on Me 85 Unit 15 谢谢你,没有放弃我 Tadashi Has Gone 91 Unit 16 泰迪走了 Meet Baymax Again 97 Unit 17 再见大白 Hiro's Puberty 103 Unit 18 小宏的青春期综合征 Baymax Goes Out 109 Unit 19 大白出走 The Secret of Microbots 115

微型机器人的秘密

Unit 20

Contents _{目录}

Unit 21		Call the Police 121 警察局报案
Unit 22		Take Baymax Home 127 带大白回家
Unit 23	2222	Maybe It's Not an Accident 133 也许不是意外
Unit 24		Update Baymax 139 升级大白
Unit 25	THE STATE OF	Four Puzzled Future Superheroes 145 不解的未来四侠
Unit 26		A Car Chase 151 汽车追逐战
Unit 26 Unit 27		
		汽车追逐战 Fred's Identity Is Exposed 157
Unit 27		汽车追逐战 Fred's Identity Is Exposed 157 弗雷德身份曝光 Fred's Conjecture 163



On the Isolated Island 181 Unit 31 在隔离岛上 How Come It's Him 187 Unit 32 怎么会是他 Baymax, Destroy Him 193 Unit 33 大白, 推毁他 Hiro's Impulsion 199 Unit 34 小宏的冲动 The Truth Comes Out 205 Unit 35 真相浮现 Callaghan Wants Revenge 211 Unit 36 教授试图复仇 Help Us 217 Unit 37 救救我们 Superheroes Fight Back 223 Unit 38 超级英雄反击 The Discovery of Abigail..... 229 Unit 39 发现艾比盖尔 Goodbye, Baymax 235

再见,大白

Unit 40

Characters Introduction 人物介绍



◀ Hiro Hamada 滨田宏 / 超强大脑

•天才级头脑智能,几乎能够制造、改装和编程出任何东西。

► Baymax 大白/守护者

- 先进的光学扫描功能。
- 配备超过一万种的医疗程序。
- 能够诊断并治疗病人。
- 能背负小宏飞行。





- 专业水准的运动能力。
- 凭借滑轮所向披靡。
- 先进的机械设计技能。

► Honey Lemon 哈妮柠檬 / 化学家

• 天才化学家, 能够迅速定制化合物。



- 漫画知识的行动百科全书。
- *能敏锐洞察到超级大坏蛋。
- 激情四射。





- 精确掌控激光。
- 专业水准的运动能力。







Total Annihilation—Yama

阎王完胜



在城市中一个黑暗角落,阎王凭借其名为"小阎王"的机器人横扫 千军,成为当天的最大赢家。正在所有人都因畏惧而退缩的时候, 一个看似天真无知的少年却从黑暗的擂台角落走了出来, 他就是小 宏,他要挑战阎王。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 step into the ring
- 2 beat it
- 3 What's your name?
- 4 That was my first . . .



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Crowd Yama! Yama!

围观者 阎王! 阎王!

Referee The winner by total annihilation, Yama!

裁判 横扫干军的赢家是——阎王!

Yama Who's next? Who has the guts to step into the ring with

Little Yama?

阎王 下一个是谁?还有谁有胆量在赛场上挑战我的"小阎王"?

Hiro Can I try? I have a robot. I built it myself.

小宏 我能试试吗?我有一个机器人,是我自己做的。

Referee Beat it, kid! House rules, you gotta pay to play.

裁判 算了吧,小屁孩儿!这儿的行规是:想玩,得交钱!

Hiro Oh, is this enough?

小宏 哦,这些够吗?

Yama What's your name, little boy?

阎王 你叫什么名字, 小朋友?

Hiro. Hiro Hamada.

小宏 我叫小宏,滨田宏。

Yama Prepare your bot, zero. 阎王 准备好你的机器人吧,无名小卒。

Referee Two bots enter, one bot leaves. Fighters ready? Fight!

裁判 双方对垒,决一死战! 准备好了吗? 开战!

Crowd Yama! Yama!

围观者 阎王!阎王!

Hiro That was my first fight. I . . . Can I try again?

小宏 那是我第一次参赛。我……我能再试一次吗?

Yama No one likes a sore loser, little boy. Go home.

阎王 没人喜欢输不起的人,小朋友。回家吧!

Hiro I've got more money.

小宏 我还有钱。

annihilation 歼灭 / gut 胆量 / robot 机器人 / loser 失败者

Oral English 口语知识点



1 step into the ring 进入赛场

ring 在此处不是"戒指"的意思,而是"竞技场"的意思。因此, step into the ring 的意思是"进入竞技场",引申为"走上擂台进行比赛"。其常用的另外一个搭配为 put sb. in the ring,表示"和某人赛一场",常出现在托福听力考试中。如:

- ► After ten years' training, he is in the ring finally. 经过十年的训练,他终于上场比赛了。
- ▶ Are you ready to put him in the ring? 你准备好和他赛一场了吗?

2 Beat it! 滚开!

beat it 表示"走开,滚开",用于口语中,有轻蔑或厌恶的意味。根据不同的场合,可以用下面的句子代替:

- ▶ Buzz off! 一边待着去!
- ▶ Get out of my face! 离我远点, 走开!
- ▶ Go away! 走开! 滚远点!
- ▶ Leave me alone. 离我远点。让我一个人待一会儿。

3 What's your name? 你叫什么名字?

这句话生活中很常用,也非常简单,通常用在不熟悉的人或是陌生人之间。当你想要认识新朋友时,可以用下面的句子提问:

- ► May I have your name? 我能知道你的名字吗?
- ▶ Are you . . .? 你是……吗? (省略号部分可换成你想确认的人名)
- ▶ You can leave your name on the paper. 你可以把你的名字写在纸上。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

That was sb.'s first + n. 那是某人的第一次……

S	ī	i	Ε	1	P
	ř		١		
		ı	ı		

- 1. That was my first try. 那是我第一次尝试。
- 2. That was her first kiss. 那是她的初吻。
- 3. That was the boy's first flight. 那是男孩第一次坐飞机。

4.		love
	那是我们的初恋。	
_		

那是我们全家的第一次旅行。

STEP

That was sb.'s first time + to do sth. 那是某人第一次做某事

- 1. That was my first time to make a kite. 那是我第一次制作风筝。
- 2. That was my first time to come to China. 那是我第一次来到中国。
- 3. That was my first time to study abroad. 那是我第一次出国留学。
- _____to go bungee jumping. 那是我第一次蹦极。
- a hero. 那是他第一次成为一个英雄。

A: What's the matter with you? 你怎么了?

B: That was my first time to ride a roller coaster. 那是我第一次坐过山车。

A: Really? 真的吗?

KEYS

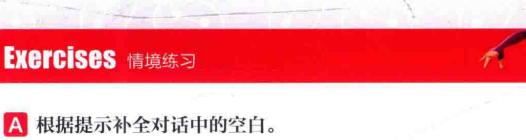
Step 1 4. That was our first

Step 2

4. That was my first time

5. That was our family's first

5. That was his first time to be



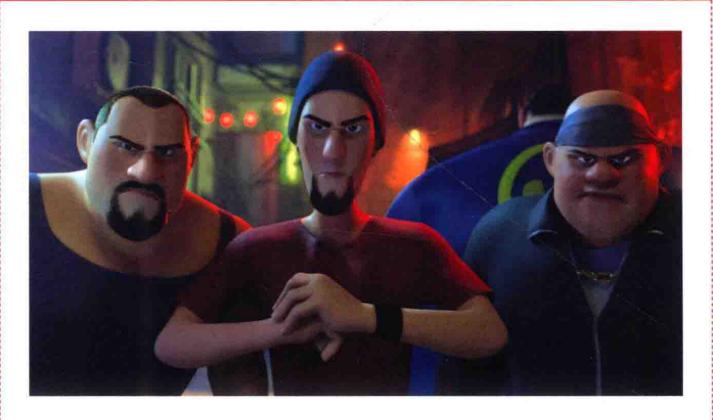
	Crowd	Yama! Yama!
	Referee	The winner by total annihilation, Yama!
	Yama	Who's next?①(还有谁有胆量在赛场上挑战)with
		Little Yama?
	Hiro	②(我能试试吗)? I have a robot. I built it
		myself.
	Referee	
		play.
	Hiro	Oh,
	Yama	⑤(你叫什么名字), little boy?
	Hiro	Hiro. Hiro Hamada.
	Yama	Prepare your bot, zero.
	Referee	Two bots enter, one bot leaves. Fighters ready? Fight!
	Crowd	Yama! Yama!
	Hiro	⑥ (那是我第一次参赛). I Can I
		try again?
		, 0
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①我们将	在今天下午赛一场。
	We are	going to be this afternoon.
		我再也不想看到你!
		! I don't want to see you anymore.
	③ 你叫什	么名字? 我能留你的电话吗?
		? May I have your telephone number?
KE	YS A ①	Who has the guts to step into the ring ② Can I try ③ Beat it ④ is this enough
1 View		What's your name 6 That was my first fight
		in the ring ② Beat it ③ What's your name

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

比赛常用的句子:

- 1 Did you watch the game last night? 你昨天晚上看比赛了吗?
- We won the game at the last minute. 我们在最后一刻赢得了比赛。
- **3** I lost the game by only one point. 我以一分之差输了比赛。
- 4 Can you beat them? 你能打败他们吗?
- 5 What's the score? 比分是多少?
- I guess all of those people are coming for the home game. 我猜想所有的人都是来看主场赛的吧!
- **7** Their defense is in good shape. 他们的防守很坚固。
- 8 Flag on the play. 在比赛中犯规。
- 9 Luckily, you've just been saved by the bell. 真幸运, 中场休息铃救了你。
- We are even. 我们打成平手。
- 11 She came third in the race. 她在比赛中获得了第三名。
- The game was cancelled because of the rain. 比赛因为下雨而取消了。

Unit 02 Angry Yama 惹怒阎王



小宏在第二回合亮出了机器人的真本事,把"小阎王"杀得片甲不 留,这使阎王怒发冲冠。就在小宏即将被围攻的前一秒,哥哥泰迪 骑车及时赶到,救下了小宏。哥哥泰迪一方面帮助小宏摆脱了围追 而来的人,另一方面也狠揍了小宏几下,算是对他的责备,小宏却 不以为意。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 I'm as . . . as you are.
- 2 Teach him a lesson!
- 3 Are you hurt?
- 4 on a roll





Screen English 情景再现

Yama Bu . . . wha . . .? This is not possible!

阎王 但……什么……? 这怎么可能?

Hiro Hey, I'm as surprised as you are. Beginner's luck. Do you

wanna go again . . . Yama?

小宏 嘿, 我也没想到。也许是新手运气好吧! 你还想再来一次吗, 阎王?

. . .

Yama Teach him a lesson!

阎王 给他点教训!

Hiro Hey, fellas. Let's talk about this . . .

小宏 嘿,伙计们。有话好好说……

Tadashi Hiro, get on! 泰迪 小宏, 快上车!

Hiro Tadashi! Oh, good timing.

小宏 泰迪! 哦,来得真是时候!

. . .

Tadashi Are you hurt?

泰迪 受伤了吗?

Hiro No. 小宏 没有。

Tadashi Then, what were you thinking, you knucklehead? You

graduated high school when you were thirteen and this is what you're doing? Hold on! Bot-fighting's illegal! You're

gonna get yourself arrested.

泰迪 那你在想什么,你这个笨蛋?你十三岁就高中毕业,结果却在干这个?抓紧了! 机

器人格斗是违法的! 你会被抓进监狱的。

Hiro: Bot fighting is NOT illegal. Betting on bot-fighting . . .

that's . . . that's illegal. But so lucrative. I'm on a roll, big

brother, and there is no stopping me!

小宏: 机器人格斗不违法。参与赌博才……才违法。但是太赚钱了。我手气可好了,老

哥, 谁也不能阻止我!

graduate 毕业 / illegal 违法的 / arrest 逮捕 / lucrative 有利可图的

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Teach him a lesson! 给他点教训!

teach sb. a lesson 本意表示"给某人上一课",在口语中引申为"给某人以教训",lesson 在这里是"教训"的意思。如:

- ▶ I hope this will teach you a lesson. 希望这会给你一个教训。
- ► Teach him a lesson and he can remember that. 给他点教训,这样他才记得住。

表示"从……中吸取教训"也可以用 learn lessons from . . . 来表达,如:

- ▶ You should learn lessons from mistakes. 你应该从错误中吸取教训。
- ▶ He learnt lessons from the practice. 他从实践中吸取教训。

2 Are you hurt? 你受伤了吗?

在口语中,这句话表示对别人状态的关心。

hurt 在这里是形容词,表示"受伤了"的状态。该句与 Are you sleepy? /Are you excited? /Are you OK? 等用法一致。

hurt 也可以作动词,表示"伤害;(使)感到疼痛"。如:

- ▶ You hurt my feelings. 你伤害了我的感情。
- ▶ It hurts a lot! 好疼啊!

3 on a roll 运气好

on a roll 表示"手气旺;交好运;连续获胜",一般用 sb. be/get on a roll 表示"某人势头正旺",尤其是用在赌博上,表示"连赢"。如:

- ▶ They are on a roll and no one can beat them. 他们手气正旺, 没人能打败他们。
- ▶ The man just got on a roll. 那个男人只是运气好而已。

表示运气好,还可以用 luck 与 fortune 等词。如:

- ▶ Lucky you! 你真是太幸运了!
- ▶ I lucked out today. 我今天的运气可真好。
- ▶ We planned to go to America to try our fortunes. 我们打算去美国碰碰运气。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I'm as + adj. + as you are. 我和你一样……

STEP

- 1. I'm as tall as you are. 我和你一样高。
- 2. I'm as scared as you are. 我和你一样害怕。
- 3. I'm as cold as you are. 我和你一样冷。
- 4. I'm ______ you are 我和你一样兴奋。
- 5. I'm _____ you are. 我和你一样筋疲力尽。

STEP 2

A do sth. as + adv. + as B (do) A做某事和B一样……

- 1. I swim as well as my father (does). 我游泳游得和我爸爸一样好。
- 2. The boy speaks English as well as the native speaker (does). 男孩英语说得跟当地人一样好。
- 3. You can make it as quickly as I did. 你可以和我一样快速地完成任务。
- 4. It is raining ______ yesterday. 今天雨下得跟昨天一样大。
- 5. The country changed ______ the city did. 乡村跟城市变化一样大。

STEF

- A: I can't believe I'm running into you here! 我真不敢相信我会在这里碰到你!
- B: I'm as surprised as you are. 我和你一样惊讶。
- A: So, how long are you in town? 那你会在城里待多久?

KEYS Step 1 4. as excited as Step 2 4. as heavily as 5. as exhausted as

5. as much as

Exercises 情境练习



	Yama	Bu wha? This is not possible!
	Hiro	Hey,① (我和你一样惊讶). Beginner's
		luck. Do you wanna go again Yama?
		···
	Yama	②(给他点教训)!
	Hiro	Hey, fellas. Let's talk about this
	Tadashi	Hiro, get on!
	Hiro	Tadashi! Oh,

	Tadashi	You okay?
	Hiro	Yeah.
	Tadashi	Are you hurt?
	Hiro	No.
	Tadashi	Then, what were you thinking, you knucklehead? You
		graduated high school when you were thirteen and this is what
		you're doing? Hold on! Bot-fighting's illegal! You're gonna get yourself arrested.
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①毕业后	,我很快就找到了一份工作。
	I found	l a job soon
	②你的行	为是违法的,马上停下来!
	Your be	ehaviors Stop right now!
	③这次的	意外事件一定会让她学到一些东西。
	The acc	cident must

B ① after I graduated ② are illegal ③ teach her a lesson

KEYS

A ① I'm as surprised as you are ② Teach him a lesson ③ good timing

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

打架挑衅常用的句子:

- 1 No bad language in my house. 在我家不许讲脏话。
- You want to take this outside? 你想要到外面解决吗?
- 3 Do you want to pick a fight? 你想挑事儿吗?
- 4 That means war. 这意味着(跟我)宣战。
- **5** Whose side are you on? 你到底站在哪边?
- **6** You are such a jerk. 你真是个废物。
- **7** You've gone too far! 你太过分了!
- 8 How dare you! 你好大的胆子!
- 9 You are dead meat. 你死定了。
- 10 Cut it out! 住嘴!

Unit 03 Aunt Cass's Love 卡斯阿姨的爱



十年的共同生活让卡斯阿姨对小宏和泰迪视如己出。在得知两个侄 子都进了警察局后,她一方面非常担心,另一方面也是"恨铁不成 钢"。小宏和泰迪见到卡斯阿姨后,心里十分愧疚,因为他们知道 自己犯错让阿姨难过了。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 Tell me you're okay!
- 2 I had a point.
- 3 Stress eating!
- 4 You'd better . . .



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hi, Aunt Cass. Tadashi & Hiro

嗨,卡斯阿姨。 泰迪和小宏

Are you guys okay? Tell me you're okay! Aunt Cass

你们还好吗? 快告诉我你们没事! 卡斯阿姨

We're fine. Hiro

我们很好。 小宏

We're okay. Tadashi

泰迪 我们没事。

Oh good. Then what were you two knuckleheads Aunt Cass

> thinking? For ten years, I have done the best I could to raise you. Have I been perfect? No. Do I know anything about children? No. Should I have picked up a book on parenting? Probably? Where was I going with this? I had

a point . . .

那就好。那你们这两个笨蛋在想什么?过去十年,我含辛茹苦把你们拉扯大。我十 卡斯阿姨

全十美吗? 不! 我很会养小孩吗? 不。我该找本育儿手册来看吗? 也许吧! 我想说

什么来着? 我本来想说……

We're sorry. Tadashi

泰迪 对不起。

We love you, Aunt Cass. Hiro

我们爱您,卡斯阿姨。 小宏

Well, I love you, too! I had to close up early because **Aunt Cass**

> of you two felons. On beat poetry night! Stress eating! Because of you! Come on, Mochi! This is really good!

好吧, 我也爱你们! 因为你们这两个小坏蛋, 我不得不在节拍诗之夜早早收工。因 卡斯阿姨

为你们,我都暴饮暴食了! 走啦,毛球!真的好好吃啊!

You'd better make this up to Aunt Cass before she eats Tadashi

everything in the cafe.

你最好在卡斯阿姨吃光餐厅里的所有食物之前,想办法补偿她。 泰迪

For sure. Hiro

小宏 那是自然。

raise 抚养 / parenting 育儿 / because of 由于 / felon 坏蛋 / cafe 小餐馆

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Tell me you're okay! 告诉我你们没事!

"tell me + 陈述句"表示说话人想要向对方确认某件事,并且说话人希 望他(或她)的判断是正确的,因此其实是用感叹句的语气询问某事。如:

- ▶ Tell me I am right. 告诉我, 我没错。
- ▶ Tell me she is still alive. 告诉我, 她还活着。
- ▶ Tell me what I have seen is not true. 告诉我,我所看到的都不是真的。

如果说话人对想要知道的答案不是很肯定,直接用 tell me 后面陈述句 的一般疑问句式询问即可。如:

- ▶ Am I right? 我没错吧?
- ▶ Is she still alive? 她还活着吗?

I had a point. 我有话想说。

point 表示"点; 重点", point of view 表示"立场; 观点", have a point 表示"有观点;有立场"。在这里使用过去时态,表示"我(本来) 有话想说(但是现在忘记了)"。

用到 point 一词的口语句子有很多,如:

- ▶ That's a good point. 说得好。 ▶ That's not the point. 那不是重点。
- ▶ You've got a point. 你说得有道理。 ▶ You miss the point. 你没明白我的意思。
- ▶ I can't see your point of view. 我不同意你的观点。

3 Stress eating! 压力饮食!

本意是用吃东西来减压的意思,在这里可以理解为"暴饮暴食"。 压力来袭时,如何释放呢? eat something sweet (吃点甜的东西)、 watch a comedy (看部喜剧)、go to karaoke with friends (和朋友去 KTV)、have a good sleep (好好睡一觉) 都是不错的选择。 stress eating 的后果有很多,比如: have a stomachache (胃痛)、 easy to get tired (容易疲劳)。因此, It's important to keep a healthy diet. (保持健康的饮食习惯是很重要的)。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

You'd better + ν. 你最好······

- 1. You'd better get up right now. 你最好现在马上起床。
- 2. You'd better clean up your bedroom. 你最好收拾一下你的卧室。
- You'd better finish your work before you leave. 你最好在走之前完成工作。

4.	1. You'd better		你最好检查一下你的行李。
	_		

with you. You'd better 你最好随身带把伞。

STEP

You'd better not + do sth. 你最好不要……

- 1. You'd better not lie down. 你最好不要躺下。
- 2. You'd better not keep talking. 你最好不要一直说话。
- 3. You'd better not stand on the train. 你最好不要在火车上站立。
- talk loudly in the library. 你最好不要在图书馆大声喧哗。
- infringe the rules. 你最好不要违反规定。

A: What about this coat? 这件外套怎么样?

B: It looks perfect. 看起来很漂亮。

A: You'd better try it on. 你最好试穿一下。

KEYS

Step 1 4, check your luggage

Step 2

4. You'd better not

5. take an umbrella

5. You'd better not

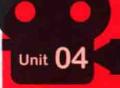
Exercises 情境练习

Α	根据提示	外全对话中的空白。	
	Aunt Cass	Are you guys okay?	①(快告诉我你们没事).
		We're okay.	
		Oh good. Then what were you	u two knuckleheads thinking?
		For ten years, I have done the	best I could to raise you. Have
		I been perfect? No. Do I know	anything about children? No.
		Should I have picked up	② (一本育儿书)?
		Probably? Where was I going w	ith this? ③ (我
		本来想说)	
	Tadashi	We're sorry.	
	Hiro	We love you, Aunt Cass.	
	Aunt Cass	Well,	④ (我也爱你们)! I had to
		close up early	⑤ (由于) you two
		felons. On beat poetry night!	Stress eating! Because of you!
		Come on, Mochi! This is really	good!
	Tadashi	⑥(你最好	子补偿一下卡斯阿姨)before she eats
		everything in the cafe.	
	Hiro	⑦(那是当	á然) .
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。	
	①告诉我	准在里面。	
		who is in there.	
	②由于天	气不好,我们就没出门。	
	We did	n't go outth	ne bad weather.
	③你最好	先洗脚再上床。	
		wash your feet and	then go to bed.
KEY	(5)	Tell me you're okay ② a book on parenting because of ⑥ You'd better make this up Tell me ② because of ③ You'd better	

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

有关饮食的常用口语:

- 1 I'm kind of picky about what I eat. 我吃东西比较挑剔。
- 2 I don't like to eat between meals. 我不喜欢在两餐之间吃东西。
- 3 I don't have much of a sweet tooth. 我不是那么爱吃甜食。
- 4 I like it strong. 我喜欢味道浓一点。
- How do you feel about diet soda? 你觉得无糖汽水怎么样?
- 6 Let's make a vegetable salad. 咱们做个蔬菜沙拉吧。
- **7** Can I take you out for dinner? 我们出去吃晚饭,好吗?
- 8 Which restaurant do you recommend? 你推荐哪家餐厅?
- 9 Are there any restaurants still open near here? 这附近有没有还在营业的餐馆?
- 10 This looks great! 看上去真好吃!
- 11 Do you know how to use chopsticks? 你知道怎么用筷子吗?



Welcome to the Nerd Lab

欢迎来到书呆子实验室



泰迪将小宏带到了自己的实验室。小宏本以为这个学校里的学生都 是书呆子,实验室也自然会沉闷无趣。但没想到他刚进实验室的 门,就被神行御姐的研究震撼到了。这还是小宏第一次见到电磁悬 浮用在自行车上呢。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 stop sb. from v.-ing sth.
- 2 on your own
- 3 Heads up!
- 4 Welcome to the nerd lab.



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Tadashi Hey, I'll take you.

泰迪 喂,我带你去。

Hiro Really? 小宏 真的吗?

Tadashi I can't stop you from going, but I'm not gonna let you go

on your own.

泰迪 我阻止不了你,但我不会让你自己去的。

Hiro Sweet! What are we doing at your nerd school? Bot fight's

that way!

小宏 太棒了! 我们来你的书呆子学校做什么? 机器人比赛在那边!

Tadashi Gotta grab something.

泰迪 我去拿点东西。

Hiro Oh great! I get to see your nerd lab.

小宏 太棒了!终于见到你的书呆子实验室了!

Go Go Heads up!

神行御姐 小心!

Hiro Whoa! Electro-mag suspension?

小宏 哇哦! 电磁悬浮?

Go Go Hey! Who are you?

神行御姐 嘿! 你是谁?

Tadashi Go Go, this is my brother, Hiro.

泰迪神行御姐,这是我弟弟,小宏。

Go Go Welcome to the nerd lab.

神行御姐 欢迎来到书呆子实验室。

Hiro Yeah, I've never seen electro-mag suspension on a bike before.

小宏 是啊,我还从没见过应用在自行车上的电磁悬浮呢。

Go Go Zero resistance. Faster bike. But . . . not fast enough. Yet.

神行御姐 零阻力,速度更快的自行车,但是……还不够快,还不够。

nerd 书呆子 / grab 抓取 / electro-mag suspension 电磁悬浮 / resistance 阻力

Oral English 口语知识点



1 on your own 靠你自己

on one's own 表示"靠某人自己", 相当于 by oneself。如:

- ▶ I can complete this task on my own. 我能够独立完成这项任务。
- ▶ You should learn to deal with problems on your own. 你应该学会自己处理这些问题。
- ▶ I won't let you face it on your own. 我不会让你一人独自面对的。

需要注意的是, own 还可以作动词, 表示"拥有"。如:

▶ Who owns this car? 这车是谁的?

2 Heads up! 小心!

Heads up! 表示 "小心; 当心",可以用下面的句子代替: Look out! Be careful! Watch out! 想要表示 "注意……,留心……"时,还可以用 mind 一词,如:

- ▶ Mind your step. 注意脚下。
- ▶ Mind your words. 注意你的用词。

3 Welcome to the nerd lab. 欢迎来到书呆子实验室。

welcome to . . . 表示"欢迎来到……", 后面加名词。如:

- ▶ Welcome to my new house. 欢迎来我的新家。
- ▶ Welcome to China. 欢迎来到中国。

welcome sb. to somewhere 表示"欢迎某人来到……",如:

► The whole family welcomed me to their home.
他们全家人欢迎我去他们家。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

stop sb. from v.-ing sth. 阻止某人做某事



- 1. You should stop them from playing with fire. 你应该阻止他们玩火。
- 2. The doctor stops his patient from exercising too much. 医生阻止他的病人过度运动。
- 3. Parents must stop their children from doing dangerous things. 家人必须阻止孩子做危险的事情。
- 4. The worker _____ the yellow line. 工人阻止行人越过黄线。
- 5. The old man _____ in the river. 老人阻止这群年轻人在河里游泳。

2 STEF

stop (sth.) (from) v.-ing sth. 阻止 / 停止(某物) ······

- 1. Can you stop the machine from working? 你能让机器停下来吗?
- 2. No one can stop time from passing. 没人能让时间停下来。
- 3. The boy finally stopped asking. 男孩终于停止了发问。
- 4. The storm _____ taking off. 暴风雨阻止了飞机起飞。
- 5. The girl _____ and fell asleep. 女孩停止了哭泣,睡着了。

STEF

A: Do you need help?

你需要帮忙吗?

B: Yes. Can you stop the car from going down? 是的。你能让那辆车停下来吗?

A: Let me try. 让我试试。

KEYS Step 1 4. stops the passengers from crossing 5. stops the young men from swimming

Step 2 4. stopped the planes from 5. stopped crying

Exercises 情境练习

You

② 戴帽子的人是谁?

③欢迎来到巧克力世界。

A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。 Tadashi ① (我不能阻止你去), but I'm not ②(让你自己去). gonna ___ Sweet! What are we doing at your _ Hiro ③ (书 呆子学校)? Bot fight's that way! Gotta grab something. Tadashi Hiro Oh great! I get to see your nerd lab. Go Go ④ (小心)! Whoa! Electro-mag suspension? Hiro Go Go Hey! Who are you? Go Go, this is my brother, Hiro. Tadashi Go Go ⑤ (欢迎来到) the nerd lab. Yeah, I've never seen electro-mag suspension on a bike before. Hiro Zero resistance. Faster bike. But . . . not fast enough. Yet. Go Go B 根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。 ① 你还从来没有见过我的家人吧?

_____ my family, have you?

KEYS A ① I can't stop you from going ② let you go on your own ③ nerd school ④ Heads up ⑤ Welcome to B ① have never seen ② Who is the man ③ Welcome to

in the hat?

the world of chocolate.

Gultural Tips 文化小贴士

英文单词nerd最早见于1950年出版的If I Ran the Zoo一书中。这个词最初含有贬义,可译为"书呆子"。

现在大部分的美国校园电影中都不乏nerd的身影,他们在某方面有着共性,比如:

- 1. 发型古怪,不修边幅,不懂时尚,甚至形象邋遢;
- 2. 对某一学科或领域有较深的钻研,并有自己独特的想法;
- 3. 不善与人交往, 经常被周围人所排挤;
- 4. 生活习惯或是思维方式不被大众所接受。

但是随着时间的推移,nerd的含义也有了一定的变化。由于nerd的定义中有专注、专业、钻研、独特等含义,这使有些人对nerd这一称呼甘之如饴。到现在,其含义更偏向于指称那些对某一领域钻研颇深、有自己独到见解的人。



Unit 05 Meet New Friends 认识新朋友



初到实验室的小宏对一切都充满好奇。刚认识了神行御姐, 又见到 了一个有轻度强迫症的"书呆子",也就是芥末无疆。小宏还在好 奇芥末无疆的物理研究时, 化学天才哈妮柠檬又让他大吃一惊……



Key Points 学习重点

- Do not move!
- 2 Behind the line, please.
- 3 Prepare to be amazed.
- 4 in this mess
- 5 Coming through!



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Wasabi Whoa! Whoa! Do not move! Behind the line,

please.

芥末无疆 哇哦! 哇哦! 哇哦! 别动! 请站在线后面。

Tadashi Hey, Wasabi. This is my brother, Hiro.

泰迪 喂,芥末无疆。这是我弟弟,小宏。

Wasabi Hello, Hiro. Prepare to be amazed. Catch!

芥末无疆 你好啊,小宏。做好大吃一惊的准备。接着!

Hiro Wow! Laser-induced plasma?

小宏 喔! 激光诱导等离子体?

Wasabi Oh, yeah. With a little magnetic confinement for ultra-

precision.

芥末无疆 哦,没错,运用一点磁约束技术,来达到超精密程度。

Hiro Wow, how do you find anything in this mess?

小宏 哇,你怎么在这么杂乱的东西中找到自己要用的?

Wasabi I have a system. There is a place for everything, and

everything in its place.

芥末无疆 我自有系统。所有东西都放在一个地方,每样东西都有自己的位置。

Go Go Need this!

神行御姐 借用一下。

Wasabi You can't do that! This is anarchy! Society has rules!

芥末无疆 你不能这样! 你把这弄乱了! 社会是有秩序的!

Honey Lemon Excuse me! Coming through! Tadashi! Oh my gosh, you

must be Hiro! I've heard so much about you! Perfect

timing! Perfect timing!

哈妮柠檬 不好意思! 借过一下。泰迪! 我的天哪,你一定是小宏! 久仰大名啊! 来得正好!

正是时候!

Hiro That's a whole lot of tungsten carbide . . .

小宏 那全是碳化钨……

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Behind the line, please. 请站在线后面。

一般情况下,这句话有提示、警告或是告诫的语气。比如在地铁中,我们经常会听到 Please stand behind the yellow line. 这句话就是表示提醒和警告,告诉乘客"站在黄线以外(以保证安全)"。

line 还可以表示"队列",如:

- ▶ Please stand in line. 请排队。
- ▶ I'm sorry. You cut the line. 对不起, 你插队了。

Prepare to be amazed. 做好大吃一惊的准备。

prepare 表示"准备", 通常用 prepare for sth.。如:

- ▶ I've got to go home and prepare for the test. 我必须回家准备考试去了。
- ▶ Hope for the best, but prepare for the worst. 抱最好的愿望, 做最坏的打算。

be amazed 表示"吃惊的,惊讶的"。在口语中表示惊讶,通常会说: It's amazing! (太让人吃惊了!)

3 in this mess 一团糟

mess 作为名词,在这里表示"混乱;脏乱的东西"。in a mess 表示"乱糟糟,一团糟",在这里用 in this mess 来强调面前东西的数量繁多且杂乱。如: What a mess! (真是乱七八糟!)

mess 也可以用作动词,在口语中常用 mess up 表示"搞砸……",如: I really messed up. (我给搞砸了。)

4 Coming through! 借过一下!

这句话省略了主语和谓语 I am,表示正在进行的动作。当你要请求别人帮忙时,通常可以说 Excuse me。如:

- ► Excuse me. Can you show me how to go through customs? 打扰一下, 你能告诉我怎样办理通关手续吗?
- ▶ Excuse me. Can you give me a hand? 打扰一下, 你能帮我一下吗?



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

Do not do sth. = Don't do sth. 不要(做某事)(用do not加强语气。)

,			_	_
١	5	u	E	۲
	ä	1	ŀ	
		ļ	Į,	

- 1. Do not park the car here. 不要把车停在这儿。
- 2. Do not let me say it one more time. 不要让我再说一遍。
- 3. Do not eat on the bed. 不要在床上吃东西。

4	with	your	mouth	full.	嘴里有东西时不要说话。
---	------	------	-------	-------	-------------

5. ______ before you finish the homework. 完成作业前, 你不能出去玩。

STEP

Stop doing sth. 在大多情况下,可以理解为"停止做某事;不要做某事"

- 1. Stop talking. 闭嘴。
- 2. Stop complaining. 别抱怨了。
- 3. Stop throwing the stones! 别再扔石头了!

4. _____ questions. 别再问问题了。

5. _______, and we will all know the truth. 别再骗人了,我们都会知道真相的。

STEP

3

A: What's this?

这是什么?

B: Do not touch it.

不要碰它。

A: Why are you so serious?

你干吗这么严肃啊?

KEYS

Step 1

4. Do not talk

Step 2

4. Stop asking

5. Do not go out to play

5. Stop lying

Exercises 情境练习

A	根据提示补	外全对话中的空白。
	Wasabi	Whoa! Whoa! Whoa!①(别动)! Behind
		the line, please.
	Tadashi	Hey, Wasabi. This is my brother, Hiro.
	Wasabi	Hello, Hiro②(做好大吃一惊的准备).
		Catch!
	Hiro	Wow! Laser-induced plasma?
	Wasabi	Oh, yeah. With a little magnetic confinement for ultra-
		precision.
	Hiro	Wow,③(你怎么在这么杂乱的东西中找到自己
		要用的)?
	Wasabi	I have a system. There is a place for everything, and @
		(每样东西都有自己的位置).
	Go Go	Need this!
	Wasabi	You can't do that! This is anarchy! ⑤ (社会是有秩
		序的)!
	Honey Lemon	Excuse me! ⑥ (借过一下)! Tadashi! Oh
		my gosh, you must be Hiro! I've heard so much about you!
		Perfect timing! Perfect timing!
В	根据汉语位	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①不要在第	別人面前批评孩子。
		your child in front of others.
	②对不起,	, 我把派对搞砸了。
	I'm sor	ry, the party.
	③站到黄纸	线后面去。
	Stand _	
(E)		Do not move ② Prepare to be amazed ③ how do you find anything in this mess
		everything in its place ⑤ Society has rules ⑥ Coming through Do not criticize ② I messed up ③ behind the yellow line
	D (1)	TO HOLDHUIZE (4) I HESSEU UP (3) DEHING THE YEROW HITE

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

认识新朋友如何破冰 (break the ice)?

- 1 How do you do? 你好吗?
- Nice to meet you. 见到你很高兴。
- **3** Just call me Jane. 就叫我简吧。
- 4 I've heard so much about you. 我听说过很多关于你的事呢。
- 5 Please sit down and make yourself at home. 请坐, 别拘束。
- 6 Do you want to come in for some lemonade? 想进来喝点柠檬水吗?
- **7** What do you say we go see a film? 我们去看场电影,你觉得怎么样?
- **8** Today, I want you to meet an old friend of mine. 今天, 我想让你见见我的一位老朋友。
- 9 Are you Kathy? With a C or a K? 你就是凯西吗? 名字是C打头的还是K打头的?
- We're going to play basketball if you want to join us. 如果你想加入我们,我们就一起去打篮球。
- Welcome to the new club. Let me introduce myself first. 欢迎来到这个新俱乐部。首先,让我做一下自我介绍。

Unit **06**

The Science Enthusiast

—Fred 科学狂魔: 弗雷德



小宏认识了实验室里的各种科学"怪人",包括喜欢天马行空的弗雷德。正是他给大家取了那么多奇奇怪怪的绰号。他的出场着实给了小宏一个"惊喜",但是在这样一个充满科学怪人的实验室里,好似也不足为奇了……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 come up with
- 2 Don't be alarmed.
- 3 What's your major?
- 4 . . . isn't . . ., is it?



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro "Honey Lemon?" "Go Go?" "Wasabi?"

小宏 哈妮柠檬? 神行御姐? 芥末无疆?

Wasabi I spilled Wasabi on my shirt one time, people. One time!

芥末无疆 我有一次把芥末洒在了衬衣上。就一次!

Tadashi Fred is the one who comes up with the nicknames.

泰迪 外号都是弗雷德取的。

Hiro Uh, who's Fred?

小宏 呃, 弗雷德是谁?

Fred This guy, right here! Ah-ah! Don't be alarmed, it is just a

suit. This is not my real face and body. The name's Fred. School mascot by day. But by night, I'm also a school

mascot.

弗雷德 鄙人在此。啊哈,不要惊恐,卡通服而已。我真人可不长这样。我叫弗雷德。白天

我是学校的吉祥物,但到了晚上,我还是学校的吉祥物。

Hiro So, what's your major?

小宏 话说,你的专业是什么?

Fred No, no, no, no! I'm not a student, but I am a "major"

science enthusiast. I've been trying to get Honey to develop a formula that can turn me into a fire-breathing

lizard at will. But she says that's "not science".

弗雷德不,不,不,不!我不是学生,不过我可是专业级的科学控。我最近一直在怂恿哈

妮去研发一种配方,能让我变成可以喷火的蜥蜴。但她居然说这"不科学"。

Honey Lemon It's really not.

哈妮柠檬真的不科学。

Fred Yeah, and I guess the shrink ray I asked Wasabi for isn't

science, either, is it?

弗雷德 才怪!那我让芥末无疆做的收缩射线也不科学,是吗?

Wasabi Nope! 芥末无疆 不科学!

Oral English 口语知识点



1 come up with 想出, 提出

表示"想到一个好主意",通常第一反应可能是 think up a good idea,但英语表达也会讲究措辞和语言的生动性。come up with sth. 就是说"突然想到某事",come up 有"跑出,跳出"的动作感。因此,生活中想要表达"灵机一动",不妨用 come up with,后面常接 solution或是 idea。如:Who came up with this good idea?(是谁想出的这个好主意?)

2 Don't be alarmed. 不要惊恐。

alarmed 作形容词,表示"惊恐的,受惊的",be alarmed 表示"害怕的,受到惊吓的"。Don't be alarmed. 通常是说话人在某个动作进行前发出的提示,也可能是对某种情况表示安慰。如:

▶ Don't be alarmed if I suddenly shout. 如果我突然大叫, 你别紧张。

Don't be alarmed. 这句话也可以用下面的句子代替:

- ▶ Calm down. 冷静!
- ▶ No need to panic. 没必要紧张。
- ▶ Take it easy. 放轻松。

3 What's your major? 你是什么专业的?

major 作名词,表示"主修的专业";作动词,表示"主修"。如果在对话中,你知道对方是学生,你就可以问他/她的专业。如:

▶ What do you major in? 你学什么专业的?

回答的方式也有几种:

- ▶ I'm an English major. 我是英语专业的。
- ▶ I major in Law. 我是法律专业的。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

反意疑问句

反意疑问句由"陈述句+简略疑问句"两部分组成,第一部分提出一种看法,第二部分用来质疑或表示证实。陈述部分与疑问部分的动词时态和动词性质应保持一致,但肯定和否定形式彼此相反,即:陈述部分为肯定式时,疑问部分用否定式;陈述部分为否定式时,疑问部分用肯定式。简单说来就是"前肯后否,前否后肯"。

STEF

- 1. Tom is in, isn't he? 汤姆在家呢, 不是吗?
- 2. We are not talking about you, are we? 我们没有在谈论你, 是吗?
- 3. The girl is good-looking, isn't she? 那个女孩长得好看, 不是吗?
- 5. There are thousands of people on the square, _____? 广场上有成千上万的人, 不是吗?

STEP 2

- 1. He swims well, doesn't he? 他游泳游得很好, 不是吗?
- 2. They do well in singing, don't they? 他们歌唱得好, 不是吗?
- 3. You have seen this film, haven't you? 你们已经看过这部电影了,不是吗?
- 4. I forgot to lock the door, ______? 我忘记锁门了,不是吗?
- 5. She didn't go to school by bike, _____? 她没有骑车上学, 是吗?

STEP

A: I passed the exam, didn't I? 我已经通过考试了,不是吗?

B: That's Science. 那是科学那门课。

A: So, what's this? 那么, 这是哪门课?

KEYS

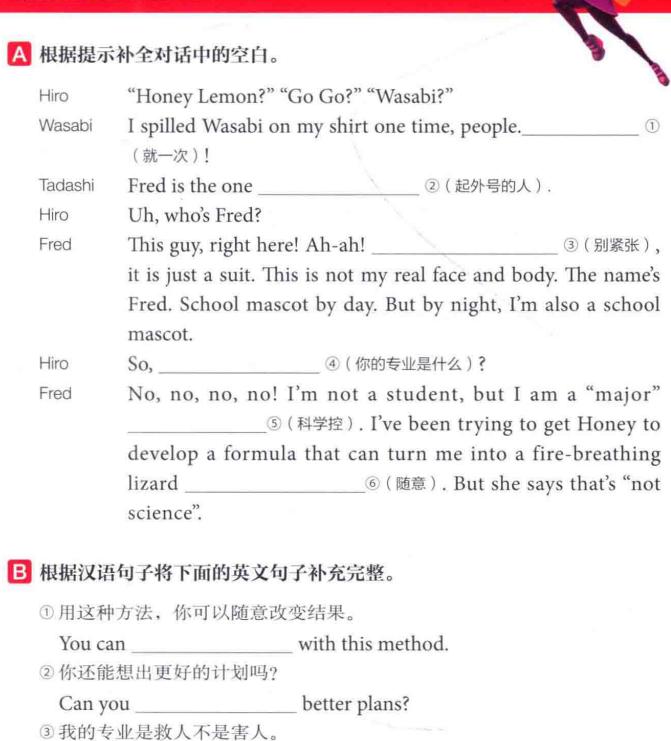
Step 1 4. is it

Step 2 4. didn't l

5. aren't there

5. did she

Exercises 情境练习



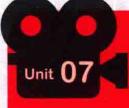
- KEYS A ① One time ② who comes up with the nicknames ③ Don't be alarmed ④ what's your major ⑤ science enthusiast ⑥ at will
 - B 1 change the result at will 2 come up with 3 My major is

____ to save people, but not to hurt people.

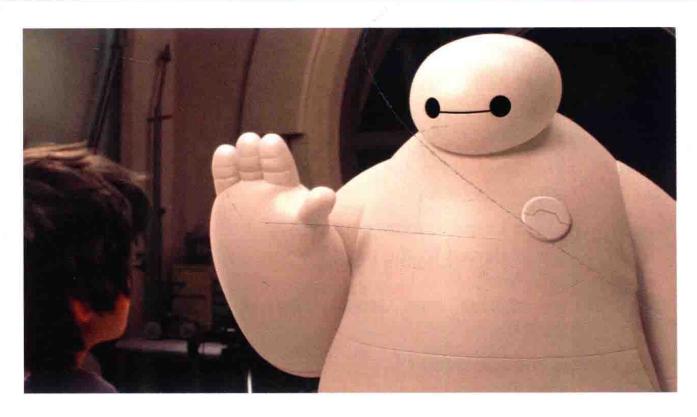
Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

校园生活中的常用口语:

- 1 He is a fraternity brother. 他是兄弟会的一员。
- **2** Are you a sorority sister? 你是姐妹会的成员吗?
- **3** It's a cake course. 这门课很容易。
- 4 Which department are you in? 你是哪个系的?
- **5** I am returning this book. 我想要还这本书。
- 6 How can I renew these books? 我怎样才能续借这些书?
- The professor is really a tough guy. 这个教授真的很严厉。
- 8 Are we going to share the room? 我们是要共用一个房间吗?
- 9 Can you give me a ride to school? 能搭你的车去学校吗?
- 10 It's really noisy here. Is there any way we can move it? 这里真的很吵。我们能去别的地方吗?



Meeting Baymax for the First Time 初见大白



泰迪向小宏展示了他的研究成果——大白。它的外形既像气球又像 棉花糖,看上去无害又可爱。站在小宏的面前,它不仅能准确地给 小宏进行简单的治疗, 还能检测他的身体状况, 甚至连他对什么东 西过敏都知道。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 Hate to break it to you.
- This is what . . .
- 3 be alerted to
- 4 It's a bummer.





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro So, what have you been working on?

小宏 那你在研究什么?

Tadashi I'll show ya. 泰迪 我展示给你看。

Hiro Duck tape? Hate to break it to you, bro, already been

invented. Owww! Dude!

小宏 胶带纸?别怪我泼你冷水,老哥,这个人家早就发明过了。嗷!老哥!

Tadashi This is what I've been working on.

泰迪 这就是我一直在研究的项目。

Baymax Hello, I am Baymax, your personal health-care companion.

I was alerted to the need for medical attention when you

said "ow".

大白 你好,我叫大白,你的私人健康顾问。当你说"嗷"的时候,我就能察觉到你需要医

疗护理了。

Hiro A robotic nurse?

小宏 机器人护士?

Baymax On a scale of one to ten, how would you rate your pain?

大白 从一级到十级,你的疼痛指数是几级?

Hiro Physical? Or emotional?

小宏 你是说生理上,还是心理上?

Baymax I will scan you now. Scan complete. You have a slight

epidermal abrasion on your forearm. I suggest an

antibacterial spray.

大白 现在我给你扫描一下。扫描完成。你的小臂有轻微的上皮组织擦伤。我建议进行抗

菌喷雾处理。

Hiro Whoa, whoa, whoa . . . What's in the spray, specifically?

小宏 哇哦,哇哦,哇哦……这个喷雾的主要成分是什么?

Baymax The primary ingredient is bacitracin.

大白 喷雾的主要成分是杆菌肽。

Hiro It's a bummer.

小宏真糟糕。

companion 同伴 / scan 扫描 / abrasion 擦伤 / primary 主要的

Oral English 口语知识



1 Hate to break it to you. 不想泼你的冷水。

这句话原句应为 I hate to break it to you. 但在口语中,可以省略主语。 hate to do sth. 表示"讨厌 / 不喜欢做某事",如:hate to disappoint you (不想让你失望)。

在口语中, (I) hate to break it to you 后面一般会加 but,表示转折,意思是"虽然我不想泼你的冷水,但是……",如:

- ▶ I hate to break it to you, but we don't like your design. 我不想泼你的冷水,但是我们不喜欢你的设计。
- ▶ I hate to break it to you, but your performance could be better. 我不想泼你的冷水, 但是你可以表现得更好。

2 be alerted to 对······警觉

alert 作为动词,表示"使警觉,使意识到", be alerted to 表示"对……警觉;对……敏感",如:

- ▶ I am alerted to any single sound in the dark. 我对黑暗中的任何一点声音都很警觉。
- ▶ I need to be alerted to the presence of bees: 我需要对蜜蜂警觉些。

3 It's a bummer. 真糟糕。

bummer 表示一些令人抓狂、令人失望、令人烦躁等的不好的经历。 在口语中可单独成句,用来表示事情的进展不像自己所想象的那样。 What a bummer! 也可以表示"真糟糕!"常用的说法还有 Too bad./ Really bad./Damn it. 等。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

This is what . . . 这就是……

STEP

- 1. This is what makes you happy. 这就是让你高兴的事。
- 2. This is what lets you down. 这就是让你失望的事。
- 3. This is what makes you excited. 这就是让你兴奋的事。
- ____ makes us sleepless. 这就是让我们失眠的东西。
- 5. _____ lets you give up studying abroad. 这就是让你放弃出国留学的事。

STEP 2

This is what + S + V

- 1. This is what you are looking for. 这就是你所要寻找的。
- 2. This is what you are hoping for. 这就是你们所希望的。
- 3. This is what we are expecting. 这就是我们所期盼的。
- 4. This is what ______. 这就是我想要的。
- 5. This is what . 这就是他所需要的。

3

- A: What are you going to give me? 你打算送我什么?
- B: What about a new iPhone? 一部新的苹果手机怎么样?
- A: Really? That is what I need. 真的吗? 那正是我所需要的。

KEYS

Step 1 4. This is what

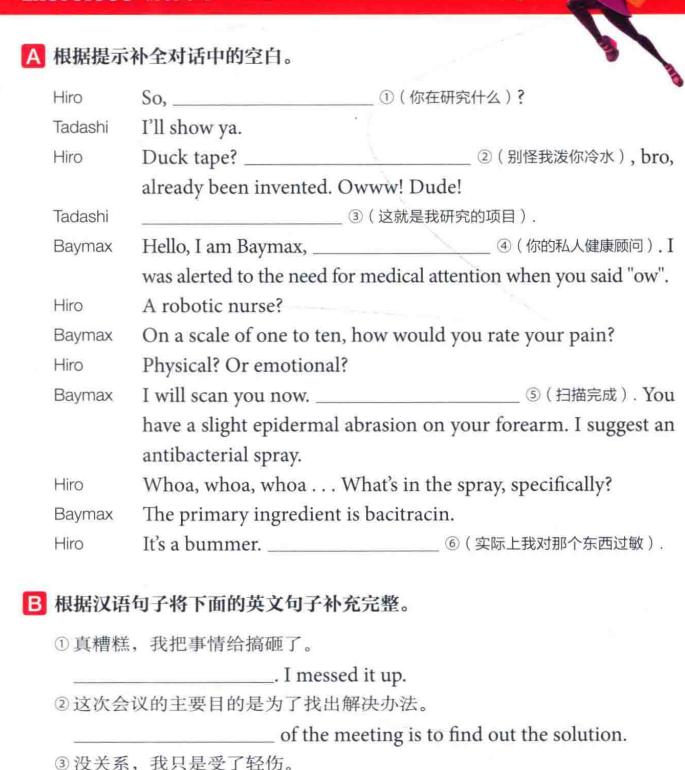
Step 2

4. I want

5. This is what

5. he needs

Exercises 情境练习



- KEYS A ① what have you been working on ② Hate to break it to you
 - 3 This is what I've been working on 4 your personal health-care companion
 - 5 Scan complete 6 I'm actually allergic to that
 - B (1) It's a bummer (2) The primary purpose (3) slight injures

It doesn't matter. I just suffered ______.

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

过敏常用口语:

- 1 It sounds like an allergy. 听起来像是过敏。
- **2** You might be allergic to seafood. 你可能对海鲜过敏。
- 3 Did you have any allergies before? 你以前过敏过吗?
- 4 Do you have any type of allergies? 你对什么东西过敏吗?
- 5 I'm stricken with allergies every spring. 每年春天我都会过敏。
- 6 I have a severe allergic reaction to mango. 我对芒果严重过敏。
- **7** My teeth are very sensitive at the gumline. 我的牙龈很敏感。
- 8 I may be allergic to some ingredients in the face cream. 我可能对面霜里的某些成分过敏。
- 9 I have hay fever. 我有花粉症。
- 10 I have allergies. 我有过敏症。
- 11 I get it pretty bad. 我过敏很严重。



A Walking Marshmallow

移动的棉花糖



看到大白后,小宏激动不已。大白看上去就像个会走路的棉花糖。 小宏对大白的构造、材质非常感兴趣,一会儿戳戳它,一会儿在大白的眼睛前面挥挥手,还把脸埋进大白肚子里,显得十分兴奋。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 look like
- 2 No offense.
- 3 I cannot be . . .
- 4 Where did you get those?
- 5 Shut up!





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Vinyl? 小宏 乙烯树脂?

Tadashi Yeah, going for a non-threatening huggable kinda thing.

泰迪 对,为了做出既无害又可爱的效果。

Hiro Looks like a walking marshmallow. No offense.

小宏 看上去像一个移动的棉花糖。没有冒犯你的意思。

Baymax I am a robot. I cannot be offended.

大白 我是机器人。我不会见怪的。

Hiro Hyperspectral cameras?

小宏 超光谱镜头?

Tadashi Yep. 泰迪 没错。

Hiro Titanium skeleton.

小宏 钛合金的骨架。

Tadashi Carbon fibre.

泰迪 是碳纤维。

Hiro Right, even lighter. Killer actuators. Where did you get

those?

小宏 对哦,更轻便。旗舰级执行器。你从哪儿弄到的?

Tadashi Machined them right here, in-house.

泰迪 就是在这里加工的,在实验室里。

Hiro Really? 小宏 真的假的?

Tadashi Yup. He can lift a thousand pounds.

泰迪 真的。他能托举一干磅的重量。

Hiro Shut up! 小宏 不是吧!

huggable 令人想要拥抱的 / marshmallow 棉花糖 / carbon fibre 碳纤维 / lift 举起

Oral English 口语知识点



1 look like 看起来像

与 look like (看起来像) 类似的还有其他的感官动词的相关表达,如:sound like (听起来像); smell like (闻起来像); taste like (尝起来像)。如:

- ▶ The boy looks like your brother. 那个男孩看起来像你哥。
- ▶ It sounds like someone is crying. 听起来像是有人在哭。
- ▶ This meat smelt like it had gone bad. 这块肉闻起来像是坏了。
- ▶ It tasted like a salty egg. 这道菜尝起来像是咸鸡蛋。

2 No offense. 无意冒犯。

当你想要表达自己的真实感受,但考虑到对方可能会感到不舒服时,你可以补充说一句 No offense. 让对方不要介意。在发表想法之前也可以先说 No offense. 通常后面跟 but 表示转折,再道出自己的真实想法。如: No offense but what are you going to deal with this problem? (无意冒犯,但你打算怎么处理这个问题呢?)

3 Where did you get those? 你从哪里弄到这些的?

这是一个普通的问句,但在生活中经常能用到。比如:

- ▶ Where did you have dinner?你们去哪儿吃的饭?
- ▶ Where did you put my stuff? 你把我的东西放哪儿了?
- ▶ Where did you go? 你去哪儿了?

4 Shut up! 不是吧!

shut up 在口语中经常会用到,通常有几种情形:一种是对对方说的话表示烦躁、不耐烦,让对方闭嘴;一种是想要打断对方的话,表示制止,让对方住口;还有一种是表示惊讶,对于对方说的话感到难以置信,虽然嘴上说 Shut up!(不是吧!怎么会这样!)让对方暂停,其实心中是想了解更多。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I cannot be + 动词被动语态 我不会被……

STEP	1. I cannot be hurt. 我不会受伤害。					
1	2. I cannot be punished. 3	战不会受罚。				
	3. I cannot be persuaded.	我不会被说服的。				
	4	loved. 我不会被爱了。				
	5	stopped. 我不会被阻止的。				
STEP	I cannot / couldn't r	more (+ <i>adj</i> .) 我再·····不过了。				
2	1. I couldn't love you more. 我多么爱你。					
	2. I couldn't agree more. 我完全同意。					
	3. I couldn't be more serious. 我再认真不过了。					
	4. I only have \$100, so I					
	我只有100美元,超过这个金额,					
	5. I cannot	我再外向不过了。				
STEP	A. I. a see at least the settlement of the	and the H. St. Piles, St. Se.				
	A: I cannot be offended. Just tell it like it is.					
3	我不会见怪。你就有什么说什么吧。					
	B: Fine. I think your thought is not comprehensive.					
	好吧。我认为你的想法并不全面。					
	A: How come?					
	怎么讲?					

KEYS

Step 1

4. I cannot be

Step 2

4. cannot afford more

5. I cannot be

5. be more outgoing

Exercise	情境练习	A
A 根据提示	补全对话中的空白。	
Hiro	Looks like a walking marshmallow (无意冒犯) .	
Baymax	I am a robot.	2 (

Hiro	Looks like a walking marshmallow	1
	(无意冒犯).	
Baymax	I am a robot②(我不会见怪的).	
Hiro	Hyperspectral cameras?	
Tadashi	Yep.	
Hiro	Titanium skeleton.	
Tadashi	③(碳纤维).	
Hiro	Right, even lighter. Killer actuators(你从哪儿弄到的)?	4
Tadashi	Machined them right here, in-house.	
Hiro	Really?	
Tadashi	Yup. He can lift a thousand pounds.	
Hiro	⑤ (不是吧)!	

B根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。

①闭嘴,	我不想	再听你说	治了。			
			! I don't w	ant to lis	ten to yo	u anymore.
②你能搬	起这个	箱子吗?				
			this	box?		
③我无意	冒犯,	但是你的	り拉链开了。	5		
			, bu	t vour fl	v is down.	

KEYS A ① No offense ② I cannot be offended ③ Carbon fibre
④ Where did you get those ⑤ Shut up
B ① Shut up ② Can you lift ③ No offense

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

一句话伤害了别人的情感,这时你该如何是好?

- 1 I'm sorry. 对不起。
- My mistake. 我的错。
- 3 I apologize. 我道歉。
- 4 It's my own fault. 都是我的错。
- 5 I take the blame. 这全怪我。
- 6 It's me to blame. 全怪我。
- 7 I didn't mean that. 我不是故意的。
- 8 Please accept my apologies. 请接受我的歉意。
- 9 I can't tell you how sorry I am. 你不知道我有多抱歉。
- 10 I'm really sorry about before. 我真的为以前的事感到抱歉。
- I'm sorry if what I said offended you! 如果我说的话冒犯了你,我道歉。
- Will you forgive me for what I just said? 原谅我刚才说的那些话好吗?



Meet Professor Callaghan

遇见卡拉汉教授



在实验室里,小宏遇到了卡拉汉教授。卡拉汉教授对小宏的机器人很感兴趣,小宏不禁在教授面前卖弄起来。可是没想到,他制造机器人的材料就是教授一手发明的。小宏目瞪口呆地看着卡拉汉教授,萌生了想要留在这个实验室的想法……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 burn the midnight oil
- 2 Pretty sick.
- 3 think about doing sth.
- 4 Your age wouldn't be an issue.



扫一扫 阿习本节精彩电影对户



Screen English 情景再现

Callaghan Burning the midnight oil, Mr. Hamada?

卡拉汉 开夜车呢,滨田先生?

Tadashi Oh hey, Professor. Actually, I was just finishing up.

泰迪 哦,教授,你好。事实上,我快弄完了。

Callaghan You must be Hiro. Bot fighter, right? When my daughter

was younger, it's all she wanted to do. May I?

卡拉汉 你一定是小宏,你是机器人格斗手,对吗?在我女儿还小的时候,她也一心想做这

个。我能看看吗?

Hiro Uh, sure!

小宏 嗯, 当然!

Callaghan Hmm! Magnetic-bearing servers . . .

卡拉汉 不错。磁力伺服器……

Hiro Pretty sick, huh? Wanna see how I put them together?

小宏 超酷的吧?想看看我是怎么组装它们的吗?

Tadashi Hey, genius! He invented them!

泰迪 嘿,天才! 是教授发明它们的!

Hiro You are Robert Callaghan? Like as in the Callaghan-

Catmull spline? And Callaghan's Laws of Robotics?

小宏 你是罗伯特•卡拉汉?是那个卡拉汉-卡特穆样条曲线,还有卡拉汉机器人学定理的

卡拉汉吗?

Callaghan That's right. Ever think about applying here? Your age

wouldn't be an issue.

卡拉汉 正是在下。想来这做研究吗?你的年龄不是问题。

Tadashi Oh, I don't know . . . He's pretty serious about his career

in bot-fighting.

泰迪 哦,那可不一定……他对他的机器人搏击事业可是很认真的。

Hiro Well, kind of serious.

小宏 嗯,是挺认真的。

Callaghan I can see why. With your bot, winning must come easy.

卡拉汉 我看得出来。凭你的机器人,获胜一定很容易。

finish up 完成, 结束 / invent 发明 / career 事业

Oral English 口语知识点



1 burn the midnight oil 开夜车;挑灯夜读; 熬夜

burn 表示"点燃;燃烧", midnight 表示"午夜", oil 表示"油", burn the midnight oil 表面直译为"点燃午夜的灯油",形象地引申为"开夜车;挑灯夜读;工作到深夜"。如:

▶ If you often burn the midnight oil, you will burn yourself out. 你如果经常熬夜,会把身体搞垮的。

2 Pretty sick. 超酷的。

sick 本身描述人的状态时,表示"生病的";形容人的情绪时,表示"厌恶的"。如:

- ▶ I am feeling sick. 我感到很难受。
- ► The movie we watched yesterday was so sick. 我们昨天看的电影烂透了。

但是根据上下文的语境,小宏很想在教授面前炫耀一下自己看似简单甚至"烂透了"却着实非常酷的机器人,所以在这里 pretty sick 可以理解为"超酷的"。

3 Your age wouldn't be an issue. 你的年龄不是问题。

issue (问题), 相当于 problem。... wouldn't be an issue 表示"……不是问题"。如:

- ▶ Your gender wouldn't be an issue. 你的性别不是问题。
- ► The weather tomorrow won't be an issue. 明天的天气不是什么问题。
- ► Whether you know the answer or not wouldn't be an issue.
 你是否知道答案并不重要。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

think about + v.-ing 考虑做某事



- Think about going swimming this weekend.
 考虑一下这周末去游泳。
- 2. Think about cleaning the house this afternan. 考虑一下今天下午打扫房子。
- 3. Think about waiting for the next bus. 想着等待下一趟公交车来。
- 4. Think about ______. 考虑一下庆祝圣诞节。
- 5. Think about ______. 考虑这周末办个派对。

2 2

think about + 从句

- Do you think about when they will come? 你们想过他们什么时候会来吗?
- Do you think about who will come first? 你们想过谁会第一个来吗?
- Do you think about where we should visit this summer? 你们想过我们这个夏天去哪旅游吗?
- 4. Do you think about ______? 你们想过我们要怎么去巴黎吗?
- 5. Do you think about ______?
 你们想过他们能否找到这里吗?

STEP

- A: Next Sunday is mother's birthday. 下周日就是妈妈的生日了。
- B: That's right. And I am thinking about what I should buy for her. 没错。我一直想着应该买什么送给她。
- A: What about a pair of high heels? She loves them. 买双高跟鞋怎么样? 她超爱的。

KEYS

Step 1

4. celebrating Christmas

5. having a party this weekend

Step 2

4. how we could go to Paris

5. whether they could find this place or not

Exercises 情境练习

Α	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。
	Callaghan	①(开夜车呢), Mr. Hamada?
	Tadashi	Oh hey, Professor. Actually, I was just ② (收工) .
	Callaghan	You must be Hiro. Bot fighter, right? When my daughter was
		younger, it's all she wanted to do. May I?
	Hiro	Uh, sure!
	Callaghan	Hmm! Magnetic-bearing servers
	Hiro	③(超酷的), huh? Wanna see how I put
		them together?
	Tadashi	Hey, genius! He invented them!
	Hiro	You are Robert Callaghan? Like as in the Callaghan-Catmull
		spline? And Callaghan's Laws of Robotics?
	Callaghan	That's right. Ever think about applying here? ④ (你的年龄不是问题).
	Tadashi	Oh, I don't know He's pretty serious about his career in
		bot-fighting.
	Hiro	Well,⑤ (有点认真).
	Callaghan	I can see why. With your bot, winning must ⑥
		(来得容易).
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①你什么日	时候能完成工作?
	When	will you?
	②谁发明	
	Who_	?
	③说实话	,事情没那么严重。
	To be h	onest,
KEY	S A ① E	Burning the midnight oil ② finishing up ③ Pretty sick
		Your age wouldn't be an issue ⑤ kind of serious ⑥ come easy
	BUI	inish up ② invented computers ③ it wasn't that serious

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

今天, 你在加班吗?

- 1 I have to work late tonight. 我今晚得加班到很晚。
- 2 I can't go to the party. I'm on call tonight. 我不能去派对了,我今晚要值班。
- 3 When do you work the night shift? 你什么时候上夜班?
- 4 Will you work overtime again today? 你今晚又要加班吗?
- 5 Nobody wants to stay up all night. So let's hurry. 谁都不想干通宵。所以,加快节奏。
- 6 Can you work on weekends? 你周末能上班吗?
- **7** Do we get paid for working overtime? 我们加班有加班费吗?
- 8 How much do you get for overtime? 你们加班费是多少?
- 9 It's three times.是工资的三倍。
- I wish I didn't have to work overtime. 真希望我不用加班。
- 11 I'm really sick of all this overtime. 我厌倦了加班。



Look for a New Angle

寻找新角度



小宏在哥哥的实验室里看到的一切都让他对这个地方充满了无限向往。但只有在一年一度的学生作品展上拿出足够让人惊艳的作品,才能获得直通大学的入场券。这可难倒了小宏。小宏一筹莫展之际,泰迪扛起小宏,将他翻转过来让他换一个角度想问题……



Key Points 学习重点

- 11 I'm going to lose my mind.
- 2 blow . . . away
- 3 Washed up at fourteen.
- 4 give up on sth./sb.



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Tadashi You gotta hurry if you wanna catch that bot-fight.

泰迪 想赶上那场机器人格斗赛的话,你最好快点。

Hiro I have to go here! If I don't go to this nerd school, I'm

going to lose my mind. How do I get in?

小宏 我必须到这里上学。如果我不来这个书呆子学校,我会发疯的。我怎么才能被录取?

Tadashi Every year the school has a student showcase. You come

up with something that blows Callaghan away, you're in.

But it's gotta be great.

泰迪 学校每年都会举办一次学生科技展。你如果能做出一个让卡拉汉眼前一亮的东西,

你就能来这里上学了。不过,你的东西一定要非常棒。

Hiro Trust me, it will be.

小宏相信我,会的。

Hiro Nothing! No ideas. Useless, empty brain.

小宏 什么也没有! 完全没想法。脑子一片空白,一无是处。

Tadashi Wow. Washed up at fourteen. So sad.

泰迪 哇,才十四岁就一败涂地了。太悲惨了。

Hiro I got nothing! I'm done! I'm never getting in!

小宏 我什么都想不出来! 完了! 我永远也上不了那所学校!

Tadashi Hey, I'm not giving up on you.

泰迪 嘿,我还没对你放弃希望呢。

Hiro Ahhh! What are you doing?

小宏 啊! 你在干吗?

Tadashi Shake things up. Use that big brain of yours to think

your way out.

泰迪 帮你换个角度。用你的大号脑袋好好想一想。

Hiro What? 小宏 什么?

Tadashi Look for a new angle.

泰迪 换一个角度看待问题。

showcase 作品展示 / useless 无用的 / angle 角度

Oral English 口语知识点



I'm going to lose my mind. 我会发疯的。

mind 表示"理智;精神;意见"等,lose one's mind 表示"失去理智,抓狂",相当于 out of one's mind。心情烦躁时,可以用以下句子表示:

- ▶ I'm bored out of my mind. 我无聊得快疯了。
- ▶ I'm bored to death. 我无聊死了。
- ▶ I'm going crazy. 我要抓狂了。
- ▶ I'm going out of my mind. 我要疯了。

2 blow . . . away 使震惊; 使惊呆

blow . . . away 一般表示"吹走;驱散",如:

- ▶ The strong wind blew the fog away. 大风把雾气都吹散了。
- ▶ His coming blew away the sadness in the air. 他的到来驱散了空气中的悲伤。

而在美语中, blow sb. away 表示"使惊呆,使震惊",如:

- ► The machine is cool. It will blow you away. 这台机器非常酷,会让你震惊的。
- Her performance blew away all the judges.
 她的表演征服了所有评委。

3 Washed up at fourteen. 才十四岁就一败涂地了。

wash up 在美语中表示"洗脸,洗手",如:

▶ You'd better wash up before meals. 你最好在饭前洗手。

在某些情况下,还可以表示"(饭后)清洗餐具",如:

▶ Go to help your mother wash up after dinner. 吃完饭去帮你妈妈洗碗。

但在此句中, wash up 表示"耗尽, 毁掉"。Washed up at fourteen. 这句话有"才 14 岁就江郎才尽了"的意味。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

give up on sth./sb. 放弃某事/某人,对……感到绝望



- 1. I will never give up on you. 我永远都不会放弃你。
- The scientist doesn't give up on his theory. 这位科学家还没有放弃他的理论。
- The bird in the cage gives up on freedom. 笼中的小鸟放弃了自由。
- You can't , 你不能放弃自己。
- 5. Many women ____ and devote themselves to their family.

许多女性放弃了自己的事业,全身心地为她们的家庭奉献。

give up doing sth. 放弃做某事

- 1. We won't give up trying. 我们不会放弃尝试的。
- He resolved to give up smoking. 他决心戒烟。
- 3. The girl gave up studying abroad at last. 该女孩最终放弃了出国留学。
- 4. Why did you ? You are such a good singer. 你为什么要放弃唱歌? 你歌唱得这么好。
- Never your dream. 永远不要放弃追求梦想。

- A: Why do you give up on your dream? 你为什么放弃你的梦想?
- B: It's too far out of reach. 梦想太遥不可及。
- A: Such a pity! 太可惜了!

KEYS

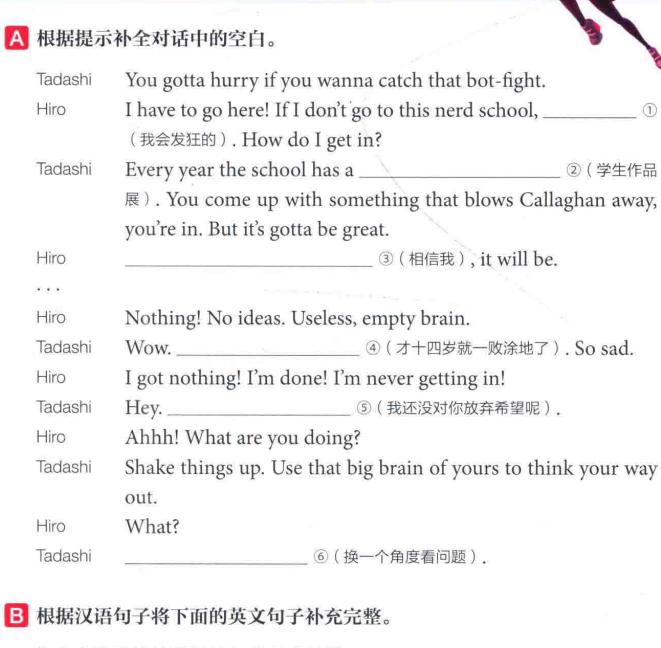
Step 1 4. give up on yourself

Step 2 4. give up singing

5. give up on their career

5. give up chasing

Exercises 情境练习



①你应该尝试从不同的角度考虑问	题。
You should try to think	
②风把气球都吹走了。	
The wind	
③怎么了? 你是疯了吗?	
What's wrong? Did you	

KEYS A ① I'm going to lose my mind ② student showcase ③ Trust me
④ Washed up at fourteen ⑤ I'm not giving up on you ⑥ Look for a new angle
B ① from different angles ② blew away all the balloons ③ lose your mind



一、前期准备

- 1. 准备必要的考试,如GRE,SAT,TOEFL,IELTS等;
- 2. 加强课外活动和社会活动经历,提升背景;
- 3. 利用好假期时间进行前期的资料检索;
- 4. 可根据个人精力与能力,考虑是否需要找专业的留学申请中介。

二、申请进行时

- 1. 选择学校, 并根据学校水平的梯度进行申请;
- 2. 文书写作;
- 3. 根据不同学校的要求,书写申请材料,最好体现对学校的针对性。

三、实时跟踪

- 1. 递交申请材料并实时跟进;
- 2. 如果没有成功,要给自己留出重新选择或调整的时间。

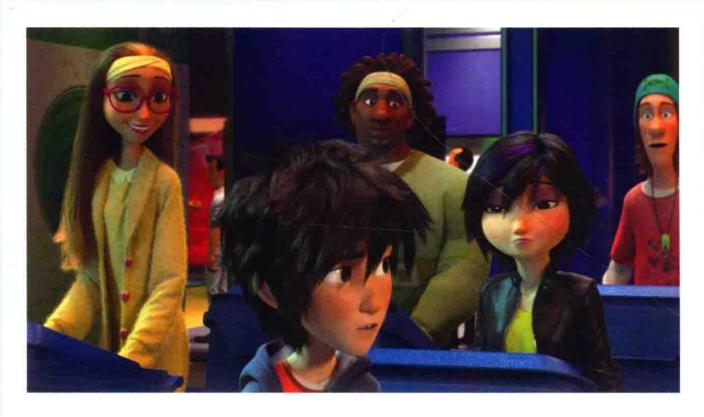
四、等待结果

- 1. 准备所申请学校的面试;
- 2. 等待录取,保持联系方式畅通;
- 3. 最终确定学校。

五、准备入校

- 1. 确定学校后,准备签证;
- 2. 及时联系学校,了解学习、生活等咨讯,并做相关的物质准备;
- 3. 即将进入一个全新的环境学习、生活,心理建设也很重要,可以通过互联网先跟学长、学姐沟通,听听"过来人"的意见和建议。

Unit 11 He's So Tense 他太紧张了



科技成果展如期而至。小宏的朋友和家人都来为他加油。对于才14 岁的他, 面对这样的阵势, 还是不免有些紧张。虽然他自己嘴上不 承认,但还是被朋友们点破。充满幽默细胞的朋友们互开玩笑,试 图缓解小宏的紧张情绪。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 How are you feeling?
- 2 He's nervous.
- 3 I haven't done laundry in six months.
- 4 both . . . and . . .







Screen English 情景再现

Tadashi Wow, a lot of sweet tech here today. How are you feeling?

泰迪 哇,好多酷炫的科技设备。你感觉怎么样?

Hiro You're talking to an ex-bot-fighter. Takes a lot more than

this to rattle me.

小宏 你可是在跟一位前机器人格斗手说话。这阵势想吓倒我还远远不够。

Go Go Yep, he's nervous.

神行御姐 是啊,他紧张着呢!

Fred Oh, you have nothing to fear, little fellow.

弗雷德 哦,小家伙,没什么好担心的。

Honey Lemon Relax, Hiro, your tech is amazing! Tell him, Go Go.

哈妮柠檬 放松点,小宏。你的发明棒极了!快告诉他,神行御姐。

Go Go Stop whining. Woman up.

神行御姐 别唠唠叨叨了,成熟点。

Hiro I'm fine. 小宏 我好着呢!

Wasabi What do you need, little man? Deodorant? Breath mint?

Fresh pair of underpants?

芥末无疆 你需要什么,小家伙?除臭剂,薄荷糖,还是新内裤?

Go Go Underpants? You need serious help.

神行御姐 内裤? 你病得不轻。

Wasabi Hey, I come prepared.

芥末无疆 嘿,我这是有备而来。

Fred I haven't done laundry in six months. One pair lasts me

four days - I go front, I go back, I go inside out, then, I

go front and back.

弗雷德 我已经六个月没洗衣服了。一条内裤我能穿四天:正着穿完后反过来穿,然后翻过

来再来一遍。

Tadashi Wow! That is both disgusting and awesome.

泰迪 哇! 太恶心, 太可怕了。

rattle 使惊慌 / whine 发牢骚 / underpants 内裤

Oral English 口语知识点



1 How are you feeling? 你现在感觉如何?

这句话既可以问心情,也可以问身体状况。如:

- ▶ The competition is going to start in a second. How are you feeling? 比赛马上就要开始了。你现在感觉怎么样? 言下之意是问对方"是否紧张"或"是否兴奋"。
- ► How are you feeling now after a week's rest? 经过一周的休息,你现在感觉怎么样? 言下之意是问对方"身体是否康复"等。

How are you feeling? 这句话还可以用 How are you? 或是 How is it going? 等句子替换,都可表示"你怎么样?你好吗?"。

2 He's nervous. 他紧张。

小宏上台展示作品前,朋友们都在调侃小宏,说他很紧张。如:

- ▶ Yep, he's nervous. 是啊, 他已经紧张了。
- ▶ He's so tense. 他好紧张。

也有朋友在安慰小宏, 让他不要那么紧张。如:

▶ You have nothing to fear. 你没什么好怕的。

安慰朋友还可以说:

- ▶ Take it easy. 别紧张。
- ▶ Don't get so uptight. 不要太紧张了。

3 I haven't done laundry in six months. 我已经六个月没有洗衣服了。

do laundry 意为"洗衣服"。在国外,公寓楼下一般都设有专门的自助或半自助式洗衣房。have done 是一个完成时结构(have/has + 动词过去分词),表示动作已经完成,并对现在有影响。如:

- ▶ I have lived in Beijing for over ten years. 我已经在北京住了十多年了。
- ▶ She has worked for eight hours. She is very tired. 她已经工作了八个小时,感觉非常累了。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

both . . . and . . . 两者都······



- 1. Both my father and my mother are doctors. 我爸爸和我妈妈都是医生。
- Both red and yellow are my favorite colors. 红色和黄色都是我最喜欢的颜色。
- 3. The girl is both tall and beautiful. 女孩长得又高又漂亮。
- went to Thailand for a visit. 我的同学和老师都去泰国旅游了。
- The bag is ________, 这个包包既实惠又实用。

neither . . . nor . . . 两者都不……

- 1. Neither my father nor my mother is a teacher. 我爸爸和我妈妈都不是老师。
- 2. I neither lend nor owe. 我既没把钱借给谁,也没欠谁钱。
- 3. I think the height is just right, neither too tall nor too short. 我认为这个身高正好,既不会太高,也不会太矮。
- 4. _____ will attend the meeting next Sunday. 我和汤姆都不会去参加下周日的会议。
- 5. The young man owned 那个年轻人既没房又没钱。

- A: What does your house look like? 你的房子什么样?
- B: Both big and bright. 既宽敞又明亮。
- A: Wow! When is the house warming party? 哇! 什么时候办暖房趴?

KEYS

- 4. Both my classmates and my teachers 5. both economical and practical Step 1

4. Neither Tom nor I Step 2

5. neither a house nor money

Exercises 情境练习

	Hatata = 3	A A A D T . L. March . La						
A	根据提示4	补全对话中的空白。						
	Tadashi	Wow, a lot of sweet tech here today						
		(你感觉怎么样)?						
	Hiro	You're talking to an ex-bot-fighter. Takes a lot more than this						
		to rattle me.						
	Go Go	Yep,② (他很紧张).						
	Fred	Oh, you have nothing to fear, little fellow.						

	Honey Lemon	Relax, Hiro, your tech is amazing! Tell him, Go Go.						
	Go Go	③ (别叽歪了). Woman up.						
	Hiro	I'm fine.						
	Wasabi	What do you need, little man? Deodorant? Breath mint? Fresh						
		pair of underpants?						
	Go Go	Underpants?						
	Wasabi	Hey, I come prepared.						
	Fred	⑤ (我已经六个月没洗衣服了). One pair						
		lasts me four days —I go front, I go back, I go inside out, then,						
		I go front and back.						
	Tadashi	Wow! That is both disgusting and awesome.						
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。						
	①我已经很久没有见过外婆了。							
	<u> </u>	for a long time.						
	②不要紧	张, 你会没事的。						
		, and you will be fine.						
	③我要下槽	娄洗衣服,要一起吗?						
	I'm goi	ng to Will you come?						
KEY	S A 1) H	low are you feeling ② he's nervous ③ Stop whining						
	(4) Y	ou need serious help ⑤I haven't done laundry in six months						

B 1 I haven't seen my grandma 2 Don't be nervous 3 do laundry downstairs

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

你是不是紧张得话都不会说了?

- 1 I'm a bundle of nerves. 我非常紧张。
- **2** You look uncomfortable. 你看上去不太舒服。
- 3 I'm out of my element. 我不适应这儿的环境。
- 4 I'm a nervous wreck. 我觉得很紧张。
- 5 I'm on pins and needles. 我觉得如坐针毡。
- 6 I've got a lot on my mind. 我感到忧心忡忡。
- **7** I was too anxious to sleep. 我焦虑得睡不着觉。
- 8 I don't feel like I belong here. 我觉得我不属于这里。
- 9 What you did makes me very nervous. 你的所作所为让我很担心。

Unit 12 Break a Leg 祝你成功



马上就要轮到小宏进行科学成果的展示了。大家为了不让小宏紧 张,给了他很多鼓励,小宏上台展示前,哈妮柠檬还将大家聚在一 起拍了一张合影。细心的泰迪注意到小宏显得有点信心不足, 便捏 了捏他的肩膀给他鼓励……



Key Points 学习重点

- Don't mess it up.
- 2 Break a leg.
- 3 Don't leave me hanging.
- 4 I really wanna go here.





Screen English 情景再现

Announcer Next presenter, Hiro Hamada.

主持人 下一位展示者——滨田宏。

Fred Oh yeah! This is it!

弗雷德 噢耶! 时候到了!

Hiro Guess I'm up. 小宏 我想我该上去了!

Honey Lemon Okay, okay! Photo, photo! Everybody say, "Hiro"!

哈妮柠檬 好吧,好吧,拍张照,拍张照!大家一起说"小宏"!

Together Hiro! 小宏!

Honey Lemon We love you, Hiro. Good luck!

哈妮柠檬 我们爱你,小宏。祝你好运!

Go Go Don't mess it up.

神行御姐 别搞砸了。

Wasabi Break a leg, little man!

芥末无疆 祝你成功,小家伙。

Fred Science! Yeah!

弗雷德 科学万岁! 耶!

Tadashi Alright, bro. This is it! Come on, don't leave me hanging.

What's going on?

泰迪 上吧,弟弟。展示的机会来了!加油,别让我失望。怎么了?

Hiro I really wanna go here.

小宏 我真的很想进入这所学校。

Tadashi You got this.

泰迪 你可以的。

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Don't mess it up. 别搞砸了!

mess sth. up 表示 "把……搞砸",口语中通常说 I messed it up. (我把这个给搞砸了。)而 Don't mess it up. 可以表示提醒,也可以表示鼓励。如:

- ▶ Don't mess it up. I'll keep an eye on you. 别搞砸了, 我会看着你的。
- ▶ Don't mess it up. You can make it. 别搞砸了, 你做得到的。

你还可以用以下句子鼓励别人:

- ▶ Come on, cheer up! 加油! 振作起来!
- ▶ Keep it up! 坚持下去!
- ▶ Keep your chin up! 别气馁!
- ▶ We're right behind you. 我们完全支持你。

2 Break a leg. 祝你好运!

break a leg 是演艺圈、戏剧界的行话,用于对表演人员上台前的祝福,即"祝你演出成功"。其准确起源已不可考,一种说法是这个短语的由来与西方的迷信思想有关,认为戏剧表演前祝福某人 good luck 反而会带来坏运,因此便故意用反语 break a leg (直译为"捧断腿")来表示祝某人好运。但随着时间的推移,break a leg 的语义范围逐渐扩大,除了演出,也可用于祝福某人试镜、考试、面试成功。如:

- ▶ Break a leg in your interview today. 祝你今天面试顺利。
- ▶ The audition is this afternoon. Break a leg. 今天下午试镜。祝你好运。

3 Don't leave me hanging. 不要让我失望。

hang 指的是"悬挂",这句话的意思是"不要吊我的胃口",也可以指"不要让我一个人孤零零的",在这里有"不要让我等得太久;不要让我失望"的意思。Don't leave me hanging.在这里还可以用以下句子代替:

▶ Don't let me down.

► Don't disappoint me.



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I really wanna go here. 我真的很想进入这所学校。

- 1. I really wanna try one more time. 我真的很想再试一次。
- 2. I really wanna rest for a while. 我真的很想休息一会儿。
- 3. I really wanna travel by myself. 我真的很想自己去旅行。
- 4. _____ live in a small village. 我真的很想生活在一个小村庄。
- 5. _____talk with my parents. 我真的很想跟我的父母聊聊。

I really would like to do sth. 我真的很想做某事

- 1. I really would like to go swimming with you. 我真的很想和你一起去游泳。
- 2. I really would like to have a big hamburger. 我真的很想吃一个大汉堡。
- 3. I really would like to say sorry to you. 我真的很想和你说声抱歉。
- 4. ______ to lie down. 我真的很想躺下来。
- 5. ______ to give up. 我真的很想放弃。

A: What's your birthday wish?

你的生日愿望是什么?

- B: I really wanna go to the amusement park with my friends. 我真的很想和我的朋友们去游乐园玩。
- A: Let's book the tickets online now. 那我们现在就在网上订票吧。

KEYS

Step 1 4. I really wanna

Step 2 4. I really would like

5. I really wanna

5. I really would like

Exercises 情境练习

Honey Lemon We love you, Hiro.

Wasabi ______ ④ (祝你成功), little man!

Fred Science! Yeah!

Tadashi Alright, bro. This is it! Come on, _____ ⑤ (别让

②(祝你好运)!

我失望). What's going on?

Hiro I really wanna go here.

B 根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。

①祝你成功。等着你的好消息。

_____. We'll wait for your good news.

②让我们猜一下下一个来的人是谁。

who is next.

③风吹乱了我的头发。

The wind .

KEYS

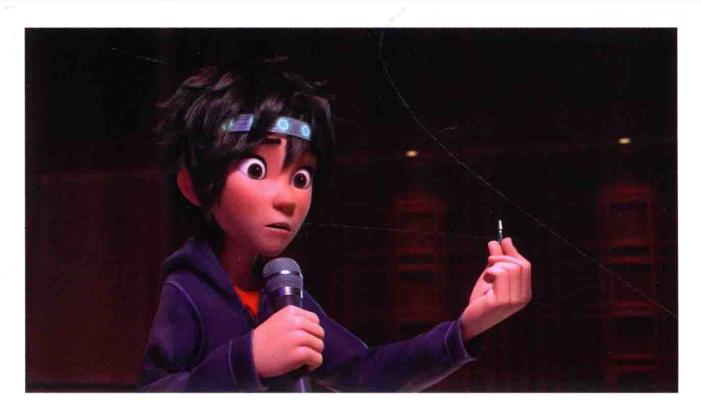
- A ① Next presenter ② Good luck ③ Don't mess it up ④ Break a leg
 - (5) don't leave me hanging (6) You got this
- B 1 Break a leg 2 Let's guess 3 messed up my hair

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

做朋友永远的后盾,鼓励他,为他加油!

- 1 Cheer up! 高兴点!
- **2** Hang in there! 撑下去!
- 3 Keep your chin up! 别气馁!
- 4 You can do it! 你能做到的!
- **5** Keep up the good work. 继续努力。
- 6 I'm right behind you. 我完全支持你。
- **7** You have my full backing. 我完全支持你。
- 8 All you can do is do your best. 尽力去做就是了。
- 9 Come on. Let's give it another try. 来吧,我们再试一次。

Unit 13 My Microbots 我的微型机器人



小宏终于站在了演讲台上。刚开始,他还紧张到手软,后来渐入佳 境,越说越起劲,完美地展示了自己的科技成果。从最后的掌声中 不难看出,不仅是小宏的朋友们对他的演讲感到十分满意,就连听 众和其他参与成果展示的学生们也对他的小机器人赞叹不已。



Key Points 学习重点

- It doesn't look like much.
- 2 It links up with . . .
- 3 by hand
- 4 with ease
- 5 You just blew my mind.



预习本节精彩电影对白





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro

Hi. My name is Hiro . . . Sorry. My name is Hiro Hamada and I've been working on something that I think is pretty cool. I hope you like it. This is a microbot.

小宏

大家好!我的名字是滨······抱歉,我的名字是滨田宏。我做了一些自认为很神奇的东西,希望你们能喜欢。这是一个微型机器人。

Tadashi

Breathe.

泰迪

深呼吸。

Hiro

It doesn't look like much. But when it links up with the rest of its pals, things get a little more interesting. The microbots are controlled with this neural transmitter. I think of what I want them to do, they do it. The applications for this tech are limitless. Construction, what used to take teams of people, working by hand for months or years, can now be accomplished by one person. And that's just the beginning. How about transportation? Microbots can move anything, anywhere, with ease. If you can think it, microbots can do it. The only limit is your imagination. Microbots!

小宏

看起来微不足道,但是当它和其他小伙伴们连接起来的时候,就变得有趣多了。这些微型机器人由这个神经递质控制。我想让它们做什么,它们就照做。这项创造的应用是无止境的。以建筑为例,曾经需要大队人马建造数月或数年,现在只要一个人就可以完成。这仅仅是九牛一毛。可不可以用在交通运输上? 微型机器人可以轻松移动任何物体至任何地方。只有想不到,没有做不到。就怕你想象力不够丰富。这就是微型机器人!

Aunt Cass 卡斯阿姨 That's my nephew! Wooh! My family! I love my family! 那是我外甥! 哇! 是我家人! 我爱我的家人!

Tadashi

Nailed it!

泰迪

棒极了!

Fred

Woo hoo! Yeah! You just blew my mind, dude.

弗雷德

哇哦!太让我震惊了,老弟。

neural transmitter 神经递质 / application 应用 / limitless 无限的 / accomplish 完成,实现 / nephew 外甥

Oral English 口语知识点



11 It doesn't look like much. 它看起来并不起眼。

look like 表示"看起来像", much 可以表示"重大的意义, 重要的地位", 因此 it doesn't look like much. 就表示"这看起来不是那么重要"或"这看起来并不起眼"。look like 既可以表示外形相似, 也可以表示状态相似。如:

- ▶ Your sister looks like your father. 你妹妹长得像你爸爸。
- ▶ What does it look like? 它长什么样?
- ▶ It looks like you had a long night. 你看起来像是整夜没睡。

2 by hand 用手

by hand 指的是 "用手",如:It was written by hand. (这是手写的。) 在机器制造时代,人们越来越崇尚回归自然,手工制作的商品越来越 受到人们的青睐,那么"手工制作的"就是 be made by hand。

3 with ease 轻易地

短语 with ease 相当于 easily, 放在句子末尾, 修饰动词。如:

► The robot can do three things at the same time with ease.

=The robot can easily do three things at the same time.

机器人可以轻松地同时做三件事。

与 ease 相关的常用短语还有 at ease,表示"自由自在;舒适"。如:

▶ I don't feel at ease in the strange place. 在这个陌生的地方, 我觉得很不自在。

4 You just blew my mind. 你刚才太让我震惊了。

blow one's mind 表示"令人十分震惊;令人感到极度兴奋"。如: What you did just now blew my mind.(你刚才做的一切太让我兴奋了。)表示吃惊,还可以用以下几句话来表示:

- ▶ I can't believe it. 我都不敢相信。
 ▶ You're kidding! 你在开玩笑吧!
- ▶ It was totally unexpected. 这完全是意料之外的。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

It links up with sth./sb. 它与……相连

STEP

- 1. It links up with the two cities. 它与两座城市相连。
- 2. It links up with China and the rest of the mainland countries. 它与中国以及其他大陆国家相连。
- 3. It links up with the restroom and the bathroom. 它与卫生间及浴室相连。
- 4. _____ the sound signals. 它与声音信号相连。
- 5. _____ the central processing unit. 它与中央处理器相连。

STEP

connect . . . with . . . 将······与······相连

- 1. The highway connected Beijing with Tianjin. 这条高速公路将北京和天津连接在一起。
- The policy of opening up to the outside world connected China with the rest of the countries in the world.

对外开放政策将中国与世界其他国家联系在一起。

- 3. The hallway connects the teaching building and the library. 这个走廊将教学楼和图书馆连在一起。
- 4. The Internet ______. 互联网将我们与世界另一头的人们联系在一起。
- 5. The science ______. 这门科学将物理学和医学联系在一起。

STEP

A: What's this? 这是什么?

- B: It's a pearl. It should be linked up with the rest ones on a necklace. 这是一颗珍珠。它本应该和其他珍珠在一串项链上的。
- A: It's beautiful. 真漂亮。

KEYS

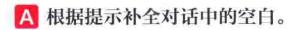
Step 1 4. It links up with

5. It links up with

Step 2 4. connects us with people on the other side of the world

5. connects physics and medicine

Exercises 情境练习



Hiro	①(看起来微不足道). But when i	it links up								
	with the rest of its pals, things get a little more in	iteresting								
	The microbots are controlled with this neural tra	ansmitter								
	②(我想让它们做什么,它	3们就照做)								
	The applications for this tech are limitless. Construc									
	used to take teams of people,	3								
	(人工建造数月或数年), can now be accomplished by or									
	And that's just the beginning. How about transp									
	Microbots can move anything, anywhere, with ease. If you can									
	think it, microbots can do it.	21								
	(就是怕你想象力不够丰富). Microbots!									
Aun	Cass That's my nephew! Wooh! My family! I love my fami	ly!								
Tada		•								
	(K. K. W.									
Frec	Woo hoo! Yeah!⑤(你太让我震惊了), dude.								
B根据	沒沒语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。									
① 化	《能动手制作一个纸飞机吗?									
C	Can you?									
	②我相信他能轻而易举地完成这个任务。									
Ι	I believe he can complete the task									
3 1	五虽然看起来不起眼,但对我却很重要。									
	, but it means much to me.									
×1										
KEYS	A ① It doesn't look like much ② I think of what I want them to do, they of working by hand for months or years ④ The only limit is your imaging.									

B ① make a paper plane by hand ② with ease ③ doesn't look like much

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

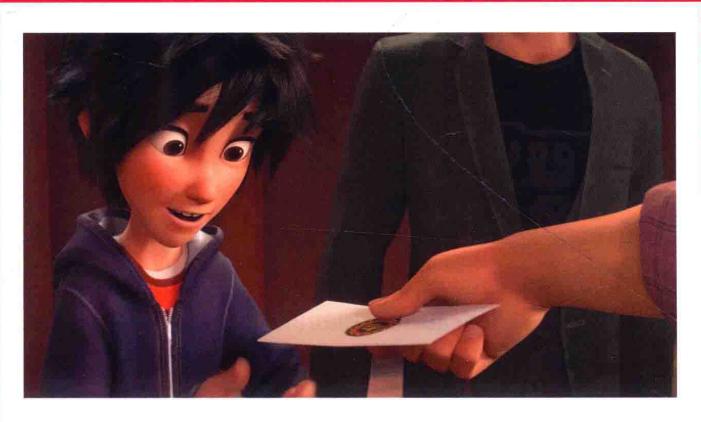
口语中lecture, speech和presentation的区别:

- ▶ lecture最为正式,是具有一定权威性的演讲,演讲人通常是这一领域的 佼佼者,向听众传递一定的思想和学识,通常在大学或科研院所比较多,如 教授对其领域的内容进行学术演讲,就要用lecture。
- ▶ speech就是单一表示"演讲"本身,演讲内容题材广泛,目的是用自己的语言使观众或听众产生共鸣并接受你的观点。因此,总统演讲、高校毕业季的名人校友演讲、就职演讲等都是speech。
- ▶ presentation包括的范围比较广,可以通过解说、PPT演示等多种形式向人们宣传、展示你的作品、产品、理念或是思想。因此,一个设计方案的说明会、一个产品包装的展示,乃至有一个观点的陈述都可以说是presentation。



Unit **14**

Look Forward to Seeing You in Class 期待课上相见



格利科技公司的大老板也来参加了此次科学技术展。他对小宏的设计很感兴趣,并希望小宏能将微型机器人卖给格利科技公司,而卡拉汉教授却不以为然。小宏做出了正确的决定,并且从卡拉汉教授手中接过了书呆子大学的入场券……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 This is your decision.
- 2 cut corners
- 3 But they are not for sale.
- 4 I look forward to . . .



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白





Krei May I? Extraordinary. I want your microbots at Kreitech.

格利 我可以看看吗?太棒了!我希望你能把你的微型机器人卖给格利科技。

Hiro Shut up! 小宏 不是吧!

Callaghan Mr. Krei is right. Your microbots are an inspired piece of

tech. You can continue to develop them, or you can sell them to a man who's only guided by his own self interest.

卡拉汉 格利先生说得对。你的微型机器人将唤醒技术革新。你可以继续开发它们,也可以

把它们卖给一个唯利是图的小人。

Krei Robert, I know how you feel about me, but it shouldn't

affect this young man's opportunity.

格利 罗伯特,我知道你是怎么看我的,但是这不该影响到这位年轻人的前途。

Callaghan This is your decision, Hiro. But you should know Mr. Krei

has cut corners and ignored sound science to get where he is.

卡拉汉 一切由你决定,小宏。但你需要知道的是,格利先生之所以取得如今的成就就是因

为他走了捷径,忽视了科学的严谨性。

Krei That's just not true.

格利 不是那样的。

Callaghan I wouldn't trust Kreitech with your microbots or

anything else.

卡拉汉 我要是你的话,就不会让自己的微型机器人或其他发明加入格利科技。

Krei Hiro, I'm offering you more money than any fourteen-

year old could imagine.

格利 小宏,我能给你一大笔钱,金额多到你这个十四岁的孩子都想象不到。

Hiro I appreciate the offer, Mr. Krei. But they are not for sale.

小宏多谢你的赏识,格利先生,但它们是非卖品。

Callaghan I look forward to seeing you in class.

卡拉汉 我期望能在课堂上见到你。

extraordinary 非凡的 / inspired 有灵感的 / self interest 个人利益 / affect 影响 / ignore 忽视 / appreciate 感激

Oral English 口语知识点



11 This is your decision. 由你决定。

这句话字面上直译为"这是你的选择",实际上是说"你来决定吧",相当于 It's up to you. 或是 It depends on you.

有时,这句话根据语境,后面可能省略了"这是你的决定,不关我的事。"的含义。如:

- ▶ This is your decision. (It's not my business.)
- ▶ It's your decision. (It has nothing to do with me.)

decision 作名词,意为"决定",通常用 make a decision (做决定)。如:

- ▶ We are waiting for you to make a final decision. 我们在等着你做最后的决定。
- ▶ Nothing can change my decision. 没有什么事能够改变我的决定。
- ▶ I've come to a decision, 我做了一个决定。

2 cut corners 抄近路,走捷径

cut corners 是一个固定短语,表示"抄近路,走捷径",也可以用 take a shortcut表示。它有两种含义:一种含义是表示在真实的道路上抄近路,如:Which way is quicker? Can we cut corners anywhere? (哪一条路更快?我们可以抄近路吗?)

另一种含义是表示在做事、学习、研究或其他活动上不踏踏实实、按部就班,而是想要投机取巧。在这种语境中,cut corners 含有贬义,可以译为"偷工减料"。如: The company cut corners by using inferiors. (公司以次充好偷工减料。)

3 But they are not for sale. 但是它们是非卖品。

该句中 for sale 为固定搭配,表示"正在出售的,出售的",not for sale 就表示"非出售的",即"非卖品"。sale 另外一个常用的短语是on sale,表示"降价,减价,甩卖"。在美国,人们会不定期地将自家不需要但却还可以使用的物品摆在前院的草地上进行售卖,称为 yard sale,即"庭院旧货出售"。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I look forward to + v.-ing 我期望做某事

- I look forward to visiting New York this summer. 我期待这个夏天去纽约。
- 2. I look forward to cooperating with you. 我期待与你们合作。
- I look forward to competing with you next time. 我期待下次和你一争高下。
- 4. I look forward to ______. 我期待尽快收到你的来信。
- 5. I look forward to . 我期待好好睡上一觉。

I look forward to + n. 我期望某事(的发生)

- 1. I look forward to your coming. 我期待你的到来。
- 2. I look forward to your visit. 我期待你的光临。
- 3. I look forward to having dinner with you. 我期待与你共进晚餐。
- 4. I look forward to . 我期待秋天的到来。
- 5. I look forward to . 我期待你的答复。

A: What about visiting Dubai? 去迪拜怎么样?

B: I'm looking forward to visiting there. 我正想去那呢!

A: Great! So when will we fly there? 太好了。那我们什么时候飞过去?

KEYS

Step 1 4. hearing from you soon

5. having a good sleep

Step 2 4. the coming of autumn

5. your reply

Exercises 情境练习

A 根据提示	补全对话中的	空白。					
Krei	May I?	①(太棒)	7) . I want you	ur microbots at K	reitech.		
Hiro	Shut up!						
Callaghan	Mr. Krei is 1	ight. Your n	nicrobots are a	an inspired piece	of tech.		
			76	r you can sell the (只被个人利益左右).			
Krei	Robert, I kr	now how you	i feel about m	ne, but it shouldn	t affect		
	this young r	nan's opporti	unity.	Name of the last			
Callaghan							
	e to get where he i	S.					
Krei			③ (不是那样的)	•			
Callaghan	I wouldn't t	ust Kreitech	with your mi	crobots or anythin	ng else.		
Krei	Hiro, I'm of	fering you m	ore money th	an any fourteen-y	ear old		
	could imagi	ne.					
Hiro	I appreciate	the offer, Mr	. Krei	④ (但它们是非	丰卖品).		
	* * *						
Callaghan	I		⑤(期待)seei	ing you in class.			
_							
3 根据汉语	句子将下面的	英文句子补充	充完整。				
①我们不	能忽视别人的	感受。					
We car	i't		*:				
②你现在							
You are	e a grown-up,	and you sho	ould				
③新的苹	果手机将会在	半年后上市发	发售 。				
The ne	w iPhone wil	be		_ in six months.			
EYS A 1	Extraordinary 2	only guided by	his own self intere	est ③ That's just not	true		

B ① ignore others' feelings ② make your own decision ③ on sale

4 But they are not for sale 5 look forward to

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

朋友获得成功,如何表达你的祝福与称赞呢?

最常用的就是 Congratulations! (祝贺你!) 单词 terrific、wonderful、great、fantastic、fabulous、 excellent、awesome 都可以单独成句,表示"好极了"。在口语中,经常用这些词来表示对对方的称赞与祝贺。

你也可以用 You're + adj. 的句型表达对对方的称赞,如:

- ▶ You're brilliant. 你真是太棒了!
- ▶ You're dazzling. 你真是光芒四射。
- ▶ You're amazing. 你太不可思议了。
- ▶ You're so sweet. 你太好了。

你还可以用

- ▶ You're a genius. 你是个天才。
- ► You are really a fast learner. 你学东西可真快。 等句子表达对朋友的赞美。



Unit **15**

Thanks for not Giving Up on Me 谢谢你,没有放弃我



小宏在胜利后回归了平静与理智,他并不着急回去大餐一顿,而是和哥哥泰迪在校园的一角安静地聊起天。兄弟之间的情愫很奇妙,有些感情只可意会不可言传。但小宏还是说出了对哥哥的感谢,若不是哥哥一直以来的鼓励,他今天也不会站在这里……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 Dinner is on me!
- 2 Nothing is better than free food!
- 3 I'm so proud of you!
- 4 Thanks for . . .



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Together Woo-hoo! Unbelievable! That was amazing!

一起 哇! 耶! 难以置信! 太神奇了!

Aunt Cass All right, geniuses! Let's feed those hungry brains. Back

to the cafe, dinner is on me!

卡斯阿姨 好了,天才们!我们去喂饱那些饥渴难耐的大脑吧!回餐厅,晚饭我请客。

Fred Yes. Nothing is better than free food! Unless it's moldy

or has salmonella.

弗雷德 太棒了。免费美食最棒了!除非它发霉了或是有细菌感染。

Tadashi Aunt Cass? We'll catch up, okay? 泰迪 卡斯阿姨? 我们过会儿再和你们汇合,好吗?

Aunt Cass Sure. I'm so proud of you! I'm proud of both of you!

卡斯阿姨 当然。我为你感到骄傲!你们俩都是我的骄傲。

Hiro Thanks, Aunt Cass. I know what you're gonna say—I

should be proud of myself because I'm finally using my

"gift" for something important.

小宏 谢谢,卡斯阿姨。我知道你要说什么——我应该感到自豪,因为我的天赋终于能用

于正途了。

Tadashi No, no! I was just gonna tell you your fly was down for

the whole show.

泰迪 不,不!我只是想告诉你,整个展示中你的裤裆都是开的。

Hiro Ha ha! Hilarious! What?

小宏 哈哈, 真好笑! 什么?

Tadashi Welcome to nerd school, nerd!

泰迪 欢迎来到书呆子大学,怪咖!

Hiro Hey, I... I wouldn't be here if it wasn't for you. So...

you know . . . thanks for not giving up on me.

小宏 嘿,我……如果不是你,我不会有今天。所以……你知道的……谢谢你没有放弃我。

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Dinner is on me! 晚饭我请客。

dinner is on sb. 表示"晚饭某人请客",表达同一意思还可以说:

- ▶ It's my treat. 我请客。
- ▶ Be my guest. 做我的客人。(言下之意是"你是我的客人,我请客")

而"我请客"的另一种表达是"我来结账",可以用以下句子表示:

Let me get it.

▶ Let me have the check.

► I'll cover it.

▶ I'll get the bill.

口语常说的还有: I'll buy you a drink. (我请你喝一杯吧!) 或是 Can I buy you a drink? (我能请你喝一杯吗?)

2 Nothing is better than free food! 没有比免费食物更好的事情了!

nothing is better than . . . 意思是"没有比……更好的了"。如:

Nothing is better than sleeping late in the morning. 没有比早上睡懒觉更好的事了。

nothing is better than . . . 这个句式表面看是比较级,但实际上有最高级的含义,这个句式相当于 . . . is the best thing. 如:

▶ Staying in an air-conditioned room on a hot day is the best. 大热天里待在空调房最棒了。

3 I'm so proud of you! 我为你骄傲。

proud of sb./sth. "为……而骄傲",如:

- ▶ His parents are so proud of him. 他的父母很为他感到骄傲。
- ▶ We all have something to be proud of. 我们都有值得自豪的事。

除此之外, take pride in 也可以表示"为……自豪", 如:

- ▶ We are taking pride in everything you did. 我们为你所做的每一件事而自豪。
- ▶ The old teacher took pride in his students. 老教师为他的学生而骄傲。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

Thanks for (not)+ v.-ing 感谢你(没有) ······

STEP

- 1. Thanks for not giving up on me. 感谢你没有放弃我。
- Thanks for helping me and my family. 感谢你对我和我的家人施以援手。

3.	Thanks	for	giving	me	a	warm	hug.	谢谢你给我一个	/温暖的拥抱
----	--------	-----	--------	----	---	------	------	---------	--------

- 4. Thanks for not ______. 谢谢你没有骗我。
- 5. Thanks for ______. 谢谢你的陪伴。

STEP

Thanks to sb./sth. 多亏了某人/某事

- Thanks to your reminder, we arrived at the airport in plenty of time.
 多亏了你的提醒,我们有充足的时间到达机场。
- Thanks to your company, we raised enough money to fund our charity.

多亏了你的陪伴,我们为我们的慈善基金筹到了足够的资金。

3. Thanks to you, we have won the game. 多亏了你,我们才赢得了比赛。

4. Thanks to _______, I have no student loans. 多亏了家人的支持,我没有助学贷款。

 Thanks to _______, I completed the task with ease! 多亏了你的帮忙,我轻松地完成了任务。

STEF

A: Congratulations!

恭喜你!

B: Thanks for supporting me all the time. 谢谢你一直支持我。

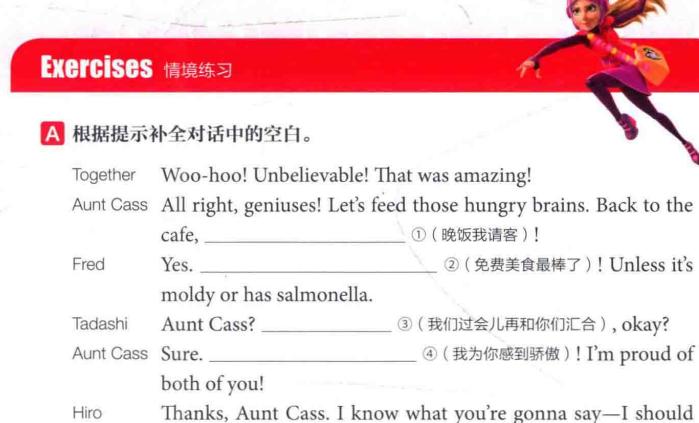
A: It's my pleasure. 这是我的荣幸。

KEYS Step 1 4. lying to me

5. being with me

Step 2 4. my family's support

5. your help



Tadashi Welcome to nerd school, nerd!

B 根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。

①大家听着: 今晚所有的饮品由我请	青客!
Listen up, everybody.	
②没有比度假更放松的事情了。	
Nothing is	
③谢谢你信任我。	
Thank you for	

KEYS A ① dinner is on me ② Nothing is better than free food ③ We'll catch up
④ I'm so proud of you ⑤ your fly was down ⑥ thanks for not giving up on me
B ① All the drinks tonight are on me ② more relaxing than taking a vacation
③ trusting me

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

外出就餐欢乐多:

- Would you like to have dinner with me some time? 你愿意下次和我一起用餐吗?
- 2 I was wondering if you'd like to go for a drink. 我在想你愿意和我去喝点东西吗?
- 3 Which restaurant do you recommend? 你推荐哪家餐馆?
- 4 I'd like some Italian food. 我想吃意大利菜。
- 5 I'd like to reserve a table for eight. 我想订张八个人的桌子。
- 6 I'd like to book a booth for five people. 我想订一个能坐五人的包间。
- **7** Coffee to go, please. 一杯咖啡带走, 谢谢。
- 8 With ketchup and mustard, please. 请加番茄酱和芥末。
- 9 Could I have a menu, please? 请给我菜单。
- 10 We need a couple more minutes to decide. 我们要待一会儿再点。
- 11 I haven't figured out what I want yet. 我还没想好点什么菜呢。

Unit 16 Tadashi Has Gone 泰迪走了



展示厅突然起火,泰迪为救卡拉汉教授而在爆炸中丧生。每个人都 沉浸在失去他的悲伤中。小宏一个人躲在阁楼里,躲在那个他和哥 哥经常欢笑打闹的地方, 无法走出失去哥哥的阴影。卡斯阿姨和实 验室的朋友们都十分担心他……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 That always cracks you up.
- 2 It's not too late to . . .
- 3 Wish you were here, buddy.
- 4 give you a big hug





Screen English 情景再现

Aunt Cass Hey, sweetie.

卡斯阿姨 嗨,亲爱的。

Hiro Hey, Aunt Cass.

小宏 嗨,卡斯阿姨。

Aunt Cass Mrs. Matsuda's in the cafe. She's wearing something

super inappropriate for an eighty-year old. That always

cracks you up. You should come down.

卡斯阿姨松田夫人来餐厅了。穿的衣服一点都不适合她八十岁的年纪,这每次都能让你捧腹

大笑。你应该下楼看看。

HiroMaybe later.小宏过一会儿再说吧。

Aunt Cass Oh, the university called again. It's been a few weeks

since classes started, but they said it's not too late to

register.

卡斯阿姨对了,学校又打电话来了。开学已有几周了,但他们说现在去报到还不算晚。

Hiro Okay, thanks. I'll think about it.

小宏 知道了,谢谢。我会考虑的。

Honey Lemon Hi, Hiro! We just wanted to check in and see how you

are doing.

哈妮柠檬 嗨,小宏!我们只是想看看你怎么样了。

Wasabi Wish you were here, buddy.

芥末无疆 希望你能来学校,老弟。

Fred Hiro, if I could have only one super power right now, it

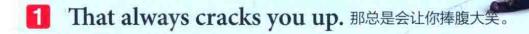
would be the ability to crawl through this camera and

give you a big hug.

弗雷德 小宏,如果现在让我选一种超能力,我希望我能穿过这个摄像头给你一个大大

的拥抱。

Oral English 口语知识点



crack 作动词表示"使……破裂,裂开",形容蛋壳裂开就可以用这个词。crack sb. up 则是美国人常用的俚语,表示"让某人大笑",如:

- ▶ Your jokes always crack us up. 你的笑话总是让我们捧腹大笑。
- ► The comedy cracked the audience up. 这出喜剧让观众捧腹大笑。

2 Wish you were here. 真希望你也在这里。

wish 作为名词表示"愿望", 最常见的就是在生日时许愿, 要用 make a wish, 如: You close your eyes and make a wish. (你闭上眼睛, 许个愿吧!)

wish 也可以作为动词,表示"希望",但其所表达的"希望"内容没有 hope 那么容易实现,因此,wish 后面加的从句通常用虚拟语气,含有"可能很难实现"的意味或是愿望与现实不符。如:

- ▶ I wish I had a boat. 真希望我有一艘船。(实际上没有)
- ▶ I wish I could. 我希望我可以。(在这里用虚拟语气,其实就是"我不行"的委婉表达方式)

3 Give you a big hug. 给你一个大大的拥抱。

这句话通常用于给别人鼓励、安慰、信心等场景,如:

- ▶ I don't know what to say. Just come here, let me give you a hug. 我不知道该说些什么。过来让我给你一个拥抱。
- ▶ Don't worry. Let me give you a big hug. 别担心,让我给你一个大大的拥抱。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

It's not too late to + v. …… 还不算晚

STEP

- 1. It's not too late to register. 现在报到还不算晚。
- 2. It's not too late to learn a new language. 现在学一门新的语言还不算晚。

3.	It's not too late to change the plan. 现在改变计划还不算晚。
4.	get ready for the exam.
	现在准备考试还不算晚。

2 2 not . . . enough to . . . 太······而不能······

- The room is not big enough to hold 300 people.
 这个房间太小,无法容纳300人。
- I'm not tall enough to reach the basket. 我不够高,够不到篮筐。
- 3. The water is not hot enough to make tea with. 水不够热,不能用来泡茶。
- 4. ______ help you. 我没有足够的信息,所以我帮不了你。
- 5. We _____ support you. 我们找不到足够多的人来支持你。

STEF

A: The bus has gone.

公交车已经开走了。

B: It's not too late to go to the airport. 现在赶去机场还不算晚。

A: OK. Let's take a taxi. 好吧。那我们打车去吧。

KEYS Step 1 4. It's not too late to 5. It's not too late to Step 2 4. I don't have enough information to 5. cannot find enough people to

Exercises 情境练习



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

Aunt Cass	Hey, sweetie.						
Hiro	Hey, Aunt Cass.						
Aunt Cass	Mrs. Matsuda's in the cafe. She's wearing something super						
	inappropriate for an eighty-year old	① (那每次					
	都能让你捧腹大笑). You should come down.						
Hiro	Maybe later.						
Aunt Cass	Oh, the university called again. It's been a few weeks since						
	classes started, but they said	② (现在去报					
	到还不算晚).						
Hiro	Okay, thanks ③ (我会表	≶虑的).					
Honey Lemon	Hi, Hiro! We just wanted to check in and see how you are						
	doing.						
Wasabi	④(希望你也在这儿), buddy.						
Fred	Hiro, if I could have only one super power right now, it would						
	be the ability to crawl through this camera and						
	(给你一个大大的拥抱).						
根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。						
① 他的笑i	话每次都能让我们捧腹大笑。						
His jok	kes						
	可以选择, 你想拥有什么超能力?						
	if you could choose one of them?						
③ 我会考	· 虑你说的每一句话的。						
	every word you said.						

KEYS

В

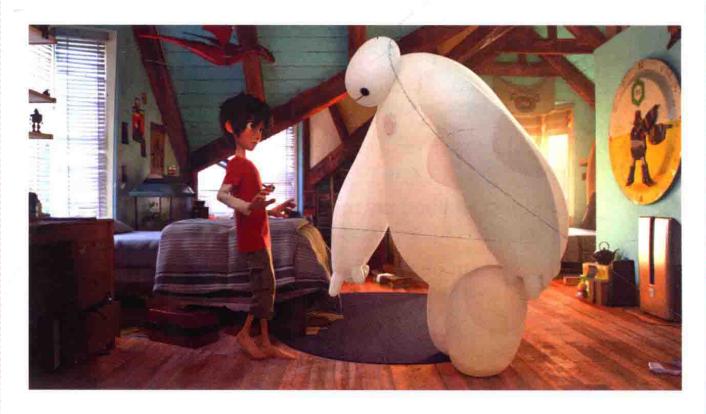
- A ① That always cracks you up ② it's not too late to register ③ I'll think about it
 - 4 Wish you were here 5 give you a big hug
- B ① always crack us up ② What kind of super power do you want
 - 3 I will think about

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

安慰失去亲人的朋友:

- 1 I'm terribly sorry. 我很难过。
- 2 I know how you feel. 我理解你的感受。
- **3** I share in your grief. 我跟你一样悲痛。
- 4 It'll be all right in the end. 一切都会好起来的。
- **Try to think positive.** 尽量朝好的方面想吧。
- 6 You can't change the past. 逝者不可追。
- **7** You have our sincere condolences. 请接受我们深切的慰问。
- 8 My sister is not dealing well with the loss. 我姐姐还没有从失去亲人的痛苦中缓过来。

Unit 17 Meet Baymax Again 再见大白



大白再次出现,泰迪已经不在了。唤醒大白的,正是小宏不小心碰 伤脚趾头后痛呼的一声"嗷"。相对于大白的热心,小宏可是很不 耐烦大白的再次现身,一个劲儿地想让大白回到它的箱子里。



Key Points 学习重点

- What seems to be the trouble?
- 2 on a scale of
- 3 Does it . . . when . . .?
- 4 No touching!





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Ow! Ah, ow!

小宏 嗷!啊,嗷!

Baymax Hello, I am Baymax, your personal health-care companion.

大白 你好,我是大白,你的私人健康顾问。

Hiro Hey, Baymax, I didn't know you were still active.

小宏 你好,大白,我不知道你还能运行。

Baymax I heard a sound of distress. What seems to be the trouble?

大白 我听到一声惨叫,发生了什么事?

Hiro Oh, I just stubbed my toe a little. I'm fine.

小宏 哦,我刚刚砸到了脚趾头,但是没事。

Baymax On a scale of one to ten, how would you rate your pain?

大白 从一到十,你的疼痛等级是多少?

Hiro A zero? I'm okay, really. Thanks. You can shrink now.

小宏 零? 我很好,真的。多谢。你可以缩回去了。

Baymax Does it hurt when I touch it?

大白 我碰它会疼吗?

Hiro That's okay. No! No touching! I'm fine. Ow!

小宏 没事。不! 别碰! 我很好。嗷!

Baymax You have fallen.

大白 你摔倒了。

Hiro You think?

小宏 你觉得呢?

Baymax On a scale of one . . .

大白 从一级……

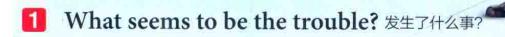
Hiro Ow! 小宏 嗷!

Baymax On a scale of one to . . .

大白 从……

active 有效的,活动的 / distress 痛苦 / shrink 收缩

Oral English 口语知识点



seem to 表示"看起来,好像",如:

- ▶ I don't seem to have any luck today. 我今天运气似乎不好。
- ▶ He seems to be getting worse. 他的情况似乎越来越糟了。
- ▶ I can't seem to get to sleep. 我好像睡不着。

What seems to be the trouble?还可以用以下句子替换:

- ▶ What's wrong? 怎么了?
- ▶ What's the matter with you? 你怎么了?
- ▶ What's the problem with you? 你怎么了?

2 on a scale of 在……数值范围内

scale 表示"规模;比例;数字范围"等,如:

- ▶ This district grew cotton on a large scale. 这个地区过去大量种植棉花。
- ▶ The force of the wind is measured on a standard scale of 0-12. 风力是按0-12级标准等级测量的。
- ▶ The scale of the map is 1: 460000. 这幅地图的比例是1比460000。

在这里的 on a scale of one to ten 是要表示 "在 1 到 10 这 10 个数字范围内"。常用的与 scale 相关的词组还有: large scale (大规模); small scale (小规模); full scale (全尺寸)。

3 No touching! 别碰!

No + v. -ing 这样的句型中,有命令、警告、拒绝的意味。如:

- ▶ No speaking loudly. 禁止大声说话。
- ▶ No kidding. 别开玩笑。
- ▶ No eating on the bed. 别在床上吃东西。
- ▶ No swimming in the river. 不许在河里游泳。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

Does it . . . when . . . ? 当……时候, 它……吗?

s	i	ī	E	i	P
		l			
	١	í	١		
		Ļ	ŀ		

- 1. Does it hurt when I touch it? 当我碰它时, 疼吗?
- 2. Does it work when it's broken? 当它受损时, 还能运作吗?
- 3. Does it look nice when I decorate the house? 当我布置房子的时候,它好看吗?

4.			when	it is	shown?	当它出现时,	好闻吗'
5.			when	you	go into	the room?	
	当你进屋时,它	2启动了吗?		200	-		

STEP

Do you know when + 陈述语序 你知道什么时候……

- 1. Do you know when the meeting begins? 你知道会议什么时候开始吗?
- 2. Do you know when he left? 你知道他什么时候离开的吗?
- 3. Do you know when she is going to come? 你知道她打算什么时候来吗?
- Do you know when ___ 你知道我们应该什么时候完成工作吗?
- 5. Do you know when 你知道你妈妈的生日吗?

A: I broke my knees. 我弄伤了我的膝盖。

B: Does it hurt when I touch it? 我碰它,会疼吗?

A: A little. 有一点点。

KEYS

Step 1 4. Does it smell good

5. Does it start

Step 2 4. we should finish the job

5. your mother was born

Exercises 情境练习



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

Hiro	Ow! Ah. Ow!	
Baymax	Hello, I am Baymax,	①(你的私人健康助手).
Hiro	Hey, Baymax, I didn't know you (还能运行).	were ②
Baymax	I heard a sound of distress	③ (发生了什么事)?
Hiro	Oh, I just stubbed my toe a little	e. I'm fine.
Baymax	On a scale of one to ten, how wo	ould you ④ (评
	价你的疼痛级别)?	
Hiro	A zero? I'm okay, really. Thanks	You can shrink now.
Baymax	⑤ (我碰它	会疼吗)?
Hiro	That's okay. No!	⑥(别碰)! I'm fine. Ow!
Baymax	You have fallen.	
Hiro	You think?	
根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。	
①楼下发	生了什么事?	

③别拍了,他需要休息。

②如果你洗这件衣服,它有可能会缩水。

В

_____. He needs to rest.

downstairs?

It ______ if you wash this item of clothing.

KEYS A ① your personal health-care companion ② still active ③ What seems to be the trouble

4 rate your pain 5 Does it hurt when I touch it 6 No touching

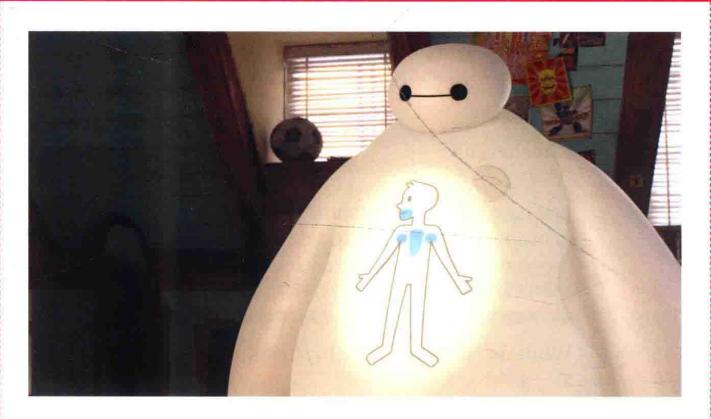
B ① What seems to be the trouble ② may shrink ③ No photos

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

谈谈健康这件事:

- 1 I think I am going to throw up. 我觉得我要吐了。
- **2** You don't look well. 你好像不太舒服。
- 3 Are you in a lot of pain? 你觉得很疼吗?
- 4 You look pale. 你的脸色不太好。
- 5 What happened to your toe? 你的脚趾怎么了?
- 6 I don't think I had a fever. Feel my forehead. 我觉得我没发烧,来摸摸我的头。
- **7** I woke up a little dizzy. 我醒来时有点晕。
- We should take you to the hospital, I think. 我想我们应该带你去医院。
- You have to go to a sleep clinic! 你得去治疗睡眠的诊所看看!
- My whole body feels weak. 我觉得浑身无力。
- l'm on a diet but it makes me feel weak. 我在节食,结果身体越来越虚弱。

Unit 18 Hiro's Puberty 小宏的青春期综合征



小宏的意外摔倒将大白激活了。对于大白的再次出现, 小宏显然没 有第一次见面那么好奇和友好。大白执行着体内的医疗程序,试图 检测小宏的身体, 而小宏却显得有些不耐烦, 一心只想让大白赶紧 缩回去……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 Unbelievable!
- 2 That's enough.
- 3 not . . . until . . .
- 4 You are satisfied with your care.







Screen English 情景再现

Baymax I will scan you for injuries.

大白 让我扫描一下你受到的伤害。

Hiro Don't scan me.

小宏别扫我。

Baymax Scan complete.

大白 扫描完毕。

Hiro Unbelievable!

小宏 不可理喻!

Baymax You have sustained no injuries. However, your hormone and

neurotransmitter levels indicate that you are experiencing mood swings, common in adolescence. Diagnosis: Puberty.

大白 你没有受到外伤。但是,你的荷尔蒙水平和神经递质水平都显示你有异常的情绪波

动。该症状常见于青少年人群。诊断结果:青春期综合征。

Hiro Whoa-what? Okay, time to shrink now.

小宏 你……你说什么?好吧,你该缩回去了。

Baymax You should expect an increase in body hair, especially on

your face, chest, armpits, and . . .

大白 你会出现体毛增多的现象,尤其是出现在你的脸部、胸部、腋窝和……

Hiro Thank you! That's enough.

小宏 谢谢你! 解释得够多啦。

Baymax You may also experience strange and powerful new urges.

大白 你还会感到莫名的强烈冲动。

Hiro Okay, let's get you back in your luggage.

小宏好啦,快回到你的箱子里去吧。

Baymax I cannot deactivate until you say you are satisfied with

your care.

大白 你不说对我的本次护理感到满意,我就不能待机。

Hiro Fine, I'm satisfied with my . . . whoa!

小宏 好吧,我很满意你的……哇哦!

sustain 承受 / hormone 荷尔蒙 / indicate 表明 / diagnosis 诊断 / puberty 青春期 / armpit 腋窝 / urge 强烈的欲望

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Unbelievable! 难以置信!

unbelievable 是单词 believe (相信)派生而来的,表示"不可信的,难以置信的"。使用时可以根据句意和语气推断当下所说 Unbelievable! 是褒义还是贬义,如:

▶ How could you finish the job in such a short time? It's unbelievable. 你是如何在这么短的时间内完成工作的? 真是太难以置信了。

(这句话中的 unbelievable 表示的是惊讶、惊叹,用作褒义。)

▶ Why can't you understand it? I have told you so many times. Oh, unbelievable. 你为什么还不理解? 我已经告诉过你很多遍了。真是不敢相信! (这句话中的 unbelievable 表示的是怀疑、质疑,用作贬义。)

2 That's enough. 够了。

不想听家人的唠叨时,你可以说 That's enough.表示"行了,别说了"。当你准备了一大堆糖果准备给来敲门的小孩时,你可以说 That's enough.表示"够多了"。当你对一些事情看不下去,忍不住参与时,你也可以说 That's enough.表示"真是够了,我都看不下去了"。还有一句 Enough is enough.表示"我说够了就是够了",意在让对方停止。

3 You are satisfied with your care. 你对你获得的护理很满意。

satisfied 用作形容词,表示"感到满意的",可以在句中作表语。如:

▶ Thanks for your preparation. I'm satisfied. 感谢你准备的一切,我很满意。

be satisfied with . . . 是固定短语,表示"对……表示满意",如:

▶ The professor is satisfied with my paper. 教授对我的论文表示满意。

当你表示不满意时,可以用 not satisfied,也可以用 dissatisfied,也可以转而使用动词 complain (抱怨)。如:

- ▶ I'm not satisfied with his answer. 我对他的回答不满意。
- ▶ I am dissatisfied with his answer. 我对他的回答不满意。
- ▶ Do you have anything to complain about? 你有什么事想要抱怨的吗?



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

not . . . until . . . 直到·······才······

STEP

- 1. My father didn't come home until ten o'clock last night. 我爸爸昨天晚上直到十点才回家。
- I won't give up until you decide to give up. 直到你决定放弃我才会放弃。
- 3. The old woman did not set foot in America again until 2012. 直到2012年这位老妇人才再次踏足美国。
- 4. The old lady ______ she was badly ill. 老太太直到病重才去医院看病。
- 5. The criminal suspect ______ he saw the evidence. 犯罪嫌疑人直到看到证据才说了实话。

STEP 2

Not until + 从句 + 倒装的主句

- 1. Not until she took off her glasses did I realize she was Angela. 直到她摘下墨镜,我才发现她是安吉拉。
- 2. Not until I ate up the food in the fridge did I find they went bad. 直到我把冰箱里的食物都吃完了,我才发现它们都变质了。
- Not until the teacher came in did the students stop talking. 直到老师进来, 学生们才停止讲话。
- 4. Not until next week ______. 直到下周, 北京才开始雾霾天。
- 5. Not until you see the traffic lights ______. 看到交通灯, 你再左转。

STEP

A: Why are you still sleeping? 你为什么还在睡觉?

B: I didn't fall asleep until eleven last night. 我昨晚直到十一点才睡着。

A: Anything wrong? 有什么事吗?

KEYS Step 1 4. didn't go to the hospital until 5. didn't tell the truth until Step 2 4. will the fog and haze begin in Beijing 5. can you turn left

Exercises 情境练习



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

Baymax	I will scan you for injuries.
Hiro	①(别扫描我).
Baymax	Scan complete.
Hiro	②(不可理喻)!
Baymax	You have sustained no injuries. However, your hormone and
	neurotransmitter levels indicate that you are experiencing ③ (情绪波动), common in adolescence.
	Diagnosis: Puberty.
Hiro	Whoa-what? Okay,
Baymax	You should expect an increase in body hair, especially on your
	face, chest, armpits, and
Hiro	Thank you!⑤(够了)!
Baymax	You may also experience strange and powerful new urges.
Hiro	Okay, let's get you back in your luggage.
Baymax	I cannot deactivate until you say you @
	(对······感到满意) your care.
B 根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
①简直不	敢相信。你真的做到了!
	You just did it!
	我已经听够了你的抱怨。
	. I'm tired of your complaints.
③ 是时候	
18	take it seriously.
KEYS A 1	Don't scan me ② Unbelievable ③ mood swings ④ time to shrink now

5 That's enough 6 are satisfied with

B ① Unbelievable ② That's enough ③ It's time to

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

有病一定要看医生:

- 1 I'd like to know where the registration desk is, please. 请告诉我挂号处在哪儿。
- **2** Can you give me your registration form? 请把挂号单给我好吗?
- **3** You'll have to wait your turn. 你要排队等号。
- **4** You need to see the physician. 你应该看内科。
- **5** Do you have a record? 你有病历吗?
- 6 Do you have health insurance? 你有医保吗?
- 7 I get free health-care. 我享受公费医疗。
- 8 I have an appointment with Dr. George at two. 我跟乔治医生约好了两点看病。
- 9 Could you describe your symptoms? 能描述一下你的症状吗?
- 10 I'm having trouble sleeping. 我睡眠有问题。
- 11 I have loose bowels. 我拉肚子。
- You seem to be having an allergic reaction. 你似乎有过敏反应。
- How long have you been like this? 你像这样有多长时间了?
- Let me take your blood pressure. 让我量一下你的血压。

Unit 19 Baymax Goes Out 大白出走



小宏被大白的脚绊倒,躺地上时,在床底发现了仅剩的一个微型 机器人,但是它在不停地动着,想去往某个地方。大白发现了其 中的秘密, 想要替小宏找到答案, 他认为这样做能稳定小宏的青 春期情绪波动……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 This doesn't make any sense.
- 2 That's impossible.
- 3 Why don't you . . .
- 4 Are you registering for school?







Screen English 情景再现

Hiro My microbot . . .? This doesn't make any sense.

小宏 我的微型机器人……? 这说不通啊。

Baymax Puberty can often be a confusing time for a young

adolescent flowering into manhood.

大白 从小男孩成长为男子汉的青春期是一个迷茫的时期。

Hiro No! The thing is attracted to the other microbots, but

they were destroyed in the fire. Dumb thing's broken.

That's impossible.

小宏 不! 它正被其他微型机器人所吸引,但它们都被那场大火毁了呀。这蠢东西肯定是

坏掉了。那是不可能的。

Baymax Your tiny robot is trying to go somewhere.

大白 你的小微型机器人好像要去某个地方。

Hiro Oh, yeah? Why don't you find out where he is trying to go?

小宏 噢,是吗?那你干吗不找出它想去什么地方呢?

Baymax Would that stabilize your pubescent mood swings?

大白 那能缓解你青春期的情绪波动吗?

Hiro Absolutely. Baymax? Baymax? Baymax? What?

小宏 当然。大白? 大白? 大白? 不是吧?

Aunt Cass Hiro? 卡斯阿姨 小宏?

Hiro Hey, Aunt Cass.

小宏 嗨,卡斯阿姨。

Aunt Cass Wow, you're up?

卡斯阿姨 哇, 你起来啦?

Hiro Yeah, figured it was time.

小宏 是啊,想着也是时候了。

Aunt Cass Are you registering for school?

卡斯阿姨 你是要去学校登记吗?

Hiro Uh, yes. Thought about what you said. Really inspired me.

小宏 呃,是啊。我考虑过你说的了,确实让我振作不少。

adolescent 青少年 / attract 吸引 / stabilize 使……稳定 / swing 涨落

Oral English 口语知识点



1 This doesn't make any sense. 这不符合常理。

make sense 表示"有意义,说得通"。如果有些什么事让你想不通,你就可以说 This doesn't make any sense.实际上,就是"搞不懂""不理解"的意思。也可以用下面的句子代替:

▶ I just don't understand.

▶ I don't get it.

另外, make sense to sb. 表示"对某人有意义", make sense 中间可以加表示程度的形容词 much, little 等。如:

▶ It just doesn't make sense to me. 这对我而言毫无意义。

That's impossible. 那是不可能的。

这句话既可以表达自己的观点,也可以用来否定他人的观点。如果有人要求你 10 秒内跑完 100 米,你可以说: That's impossible.也可以说: Are you kidding me? (你是在跟我开玩笑吗?)

值得注意的是, impossible 虽然有否定含义, 但在口语中经常用否定句, 即双重否定,来表达一件事的可能性。这在个人英雄主义盛行的美国大片中,尤其是"拯救地球""拯救全人类""拯救整个星球"的主题中经常出现,就像电影《碟中谍》一样,名字虽然叫 Mission: Impossible (不可能完成的任务),但每次阿汤哥总能化险为夷,完成任务。

3 Are you registering for school? 你要去学校登记吗?

register for school 的意思是"去学校登记",即"登记入学"。这里的 school,因为有语境,指的是大学。整个教育体系中包括 kindergarten 或 nursery school(幼儿园),elementary school(小学),junior high school(中学),high school(高中),college(大学)。而在美国,college 指包括 university 在内的大学。而大学中,freshman 是"大一菜鸟",sophomore 是"大二学生",junior 是"大三学生",senior 则是"大四学生"。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

Why don't you + ν.? 你为什么不……呢?

5	31	E	1	P
)-	1		
		U		

- 1. Why don't you follow me? 你为什么不跟着我呢?
- 2. Why don't you listen to me? 你为什么不听我的话呢?
- 3. Why don't you come to eat? 你为什么不来吃饭呢?
- 4. Why don't you ______? 你为什么不帮妈妈做些家务呢?
- 5. Why don't you _______? 你为什么不稍作休息呢?

STER

Why not + v. ? 为什么不……呢?

- 1. Why not come with me? 为什么不跟我来?
- 2. Why not just be friendly? 为什么不友好一点呢?
- 3. Why not attend my birthday party? 为什么不参加我的生日派对呢?
- 4. Why not ______ before you go out? 出门前为什么不关灯呢?
- 5. Why not ______? 为什么不检查一下你的行李呢?

STEF

- A: There is no water. 没有水了。
- B: Why don't we go to the supermarket? 我们为什么不去超市呢?
- A: Good idea. 好主意。

KEYS

Step 1

4. help your mother do some housework

5. have a short rest

Step 2

4. turn off the lights

5. check your luggage

Exercises 情境练习

A	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。	
	Hiro	My microbot?① (这说不通啊)!	
	Baymax	Puberty can often be a confusing time for a young adolescent	
	flowering into manhood.		
	Hiro	No! The thing is attracted to the other microbots, but they	
		were destroyed in the fire. Dumb thing's broken② (那是不可能的)!	
	Baymax	Your tiny robot is trying to	
	Hiro	Oh, yeah? Why don't you find out where he is trying to go?	
	Baymax	Would that stabilize your pubescent mood swings?	
	Hiro	④ (当然)! Baymax? Baymax? Baymax? What?	
	Aunt Cass	Hiro?	
	Hiro	Hey, Aunt Cass.	
	Aunt Cass	Wow, you're up?	
	Hiro	Yeah, figured it was time.	
	Aunt Cass	⑤(你是要去学校登记吗)?	
	Hiro	Uh, yes. Thought about what you said. Really inspired me.	
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。	
	①我已经位	故完了。这说不通啊。	
	I'm dor	ne with this	
		兑,连续工作超过12小时是不可能的。	
		to work over twelve hours without stopping.	
		什么不回家呢?	
		go home?	
(E)		This doesn't make any sense ② That's impossible ③ go somewhere	
		Absolutely ⑤ Are you registering for school This doesn't make any sense ② It's impossible for me ③ Why don't we	
	D (1)	This doesn't make any sense (2) its impossible for the (3) willy don't we	

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

你是不是也有困惑的时候呢?

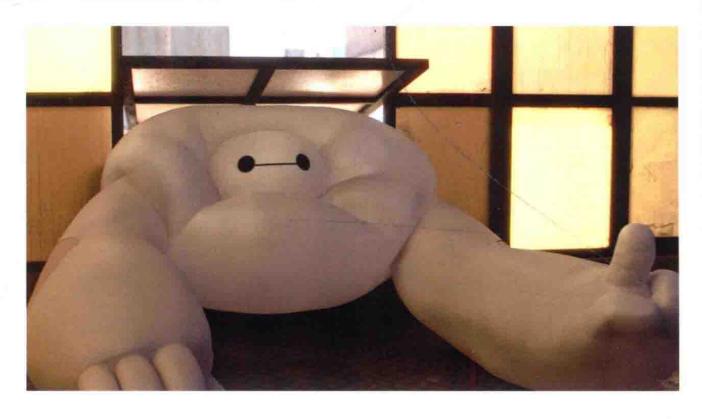
- 1 I got so confused. 我很困惑。
- 2 What should I do? 我该怎么办?
- 3 I can't quite understand this. 我没太理解。
- 4 I don't buy your story. 我不相信你的鬼话。
- 5 I'm completely out of ideas. 我是彻底没辙了。
- 6 What is that supposed to mean? 那是什么意思?
- **7** What do you mean by that? 你说那话什么意思?

- 8 I don't know what I am supposed to do. 我不知道如何是好。
- Believe it or not, it happened. 信不信由你,但确有此事。
- You look like you don't know what's going on. 你看上去有些困惑。



The Secret of Microbots

微型机器人的秘密



小宏和大白来到了一个废旧的仓库门口,翻窗进入了仓库内部。小宏小心地接近一个运转的机器时发现,有人在暗中生产他的微型机器人——仓库里所有的油桶中都装满了微型机器人。正当他百思不得其解的时候,危险正朝他们一步步逼近……



Key Points 学习重点

- Please exercise caution.
- 2 It will take sb. some time to do sth.
- 3 just keep it down
- 4 You gave me a heart attack.



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Baymax! Are you crazy? What are you doing?

小宏 大白! 你疯了吗? 你这是要干吗?

Baymax I have found where your tiny robot wants to go.

大白 我找到你的小微型机器人要去的地方了。

Hiro I told you, it's broken! It's not trying to go . . . Locked.

小宏 都跟你说了,它坏了! 它没有要去……锁住了。

Baymax There is a window. Please exercise caution. A fall from

this height could lead to bodily harm. Oh, no. Excuse

me, while I let out some air.

大白 那有窗户。请注意安全。从这样的高度坠落可导致身体损伤。哦,糟糕!抱歉,请

允许我放掉一些空气。

Hiro Are you done?

小宏 好了吗?

Baymax Yes, it will take me a moment to re-inflate.

大白 好了,我需要点时间重新充满。

Hiro Fine, just keep it down. My microbots? Someone's

making more . . .

小宏 好吧,声音小点就是了。我的微型机器人?有人正在批量制造……

Baymax Hiro? 大白 小宏?

Hiro You gave me a heart attack.

小宏心脏病都快被你吓出来了。

Baymax My hands are equipped with defibrillators. Clear!

大白 我的手掌内置电击器。准备好了吗?

Hiro Stop! Stop! It's just an expression!

小宏 停! 住手! 我只是打个比方。

Baymax Oh, no. 大白 哦,糟糕!

Hiro Run! Oh, come on!

小宏 快跑! 噢, 快点!

crazy 疯狂的 / height 高度 / equip 装备

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Please exercise caution. 请注意安全。

exercise caution 的意思是"小心谨慎"。在这里,大白怕小宏从窗户上坠落,因此可以译为"请注意安全",还可以用 Take care. / Be careful. / Watch out. / Head up. 来表示同一意思。

*注意:虽然以上都是提醒人当心的意思,但 Head up. 多用于要人家抬头注意的情况下。例如有东西从天花板上掉下来,你就可以说: Head up. 而 Watch your step.则表示"注意脚下",通常会在电梯、楼梯、地铁站中出现。

2 Just keep it down. 小点声。

Keep it down. 是一句口语常用语,既可以表示"别闹了",也表示将声音降下来。如:

▶ Could you keep it down, please? 小声一点, 好吗?

当你想要安静一会儿或是要求别人把声音调低点,就可以跟对方说:

- ▶ Please be quiet, 请保持安静。
 - ▶ Just shut up. 闭嘴。
- ▶ Why don't you knock it off? 为什么不把它关掉?
- ▶ It's too loud. Just turn it down. 太吵了,请把声音调小一点。
- ▶ Would you mind making less noise? 你能小点声吗?

3 You gave me a heart attack. 你吓了我一跳。

a heart attack 表示"心脏病发作", give sb. a heart attack 就是"让某人心脏病发作"的意思。You gave me a heart attack. 在这里理解为"吓死我了"再贴切不过了。

受到惊吓时, 你要如何表达呢?

- ► It's a nightmare. 真像一场噩梦一样。
- ▶ I was really freaked out. 我真是吓坏了。
- ▶ I was scared stupid. 我都吓傻了。

- ▶ I'm scared to death. 我都吓死了。
- ▶ I'm shaking like a leaf. 我害怕得发抖。
- ► It scared me out of my wits. 吓得我都失去理智了。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

It will take sb. some time to do sth. 花费某人一些时间来做某事



- 1. It will take me five minutes to finish the work. 做完这项工作需要花费我五分钟的时间。
- It will take the computer a moment to start the procedure. 计算机要花点时间来启动程序。
- It will take us a weekend to find the best place. 我们要花一个周末的时间来寻找最好的地方。

to finish the course. 我要花四年的时间完成这个课程。

5. to do the research. 他将用一生的时间来做研究。

sb. spend some time (in) doing sth. 某人花费一些时间来做某事

- 1. I spent five minutes (in) finishing the work. 我花五分钟时间完成工作。
- 2. We spent a moment (in) making the lights on. 我们花了点时间才让灯亮起来。
- 3. We spent a whole weekend finding the best place. 我们花了一整个周末的时间来寻找最好的地方。

finishing the course. 我花了四年的时间完成了这个课程。

5. He ____ doing the research. 他将用一生的时间来做研究。

A: Is it far?

远吗?

B: It will take me half an hour to walk there. 我要花半小时才能走到。

A: Can we take a bus? 我们能坐公交车吗?

KEYS

Step 1 4. It will take me four years

5. It will take him a life time

Step 2

4. spent four years (in)

5. will spend a life time (in)

Exercises 情境练习

②我恐高。

I am afraid of

③走到那里需要花费我两个小时的时间。

It ______ to walk there.



KEYS A ① Are you crazy ② Please exercise caution ③ let out some air
④ just keep it down ⑤ You gave me a heart attack ⑥ It's just an expression
B ① keep it down ② heights ③ will take me two hours

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

不能说的"秘密":

- 1 I have a secret. 我有一个秘密。
- **2** Her lips are sealed. 她的嘴很紧。
- That's all I know. 我就知道这些。
- 4 She can't keep a secret. 她不会保密。
- 5 She has got a big mouth. 她嘴不够严。
- 6 Please keep this secret for me. 请为我保密。
- **7** It was a slip of the tongue. 无意中说漏嘴了。
- 8 Don't tell anyone else. 不要告诉其他任何人。
- 9 This is just between you and me. 此事就你知我知。
- 10 I will explain everything to you. 我把一切都告诉你。
- 11 I promise I won't say a word. 我保证不透露一个字。
- I will fill you in when I am available. 等我有时间了就把一切都告诉你。

Unit 21 Call the Police 警察局报案



头戴歌伎面具的男人带着一队会飞的微型机器人袭击了小宏和大 白。在摆脱了面具男的追踪后,他们便赶去警察局报案。然而,事 情太过离谱,警察也难以置信,只当他们是小孩子胡闹,要打电话 给家长来接他们……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 let me get this straight
- 2 file a report
- 3 What's wrong with you?
- 4 How about . . .



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Desk Sergeant Alright, let me get this straight: a man in a kabuki mask

attacked you with an army of miniature flying robots.

接待警员 好了,让我整理一下思路:一个头戴歌伎面具的男人带着一队会飞的小机器人袭击

了你。

Hiro Microbots!

小宏 是微型机器人!

Desk Sergeant Microbots.

接待警员 微型机器人。

Hiro Yeah, he was controlling them telepathically with a

neurocranial transmitter.

小宏嗯,他通过戴在头部的神经递质以心电感应的方式控制那些机器人。

Desk Sergeant So Mr. Kabuki was using ESP to attack you and balloon

man. Did you file a report when your flying robots were

stolen?

接待警员 也就是说,这位面具先生用超能力袭击了你和气球人。你那会飞的机器人被盗后,

你报过案吗?

Hiro No, I thought they were all destroyed. Look, I know it

sounds crazy but Baymax was there too. Tell him.

小宏 没有,我以为它们都被烧毁了。听着,我知道这听起来是有点不可思议,不过当时

大白也在。告诉他。

Baymax Yes, officer. He is telling the truuuuuu . . .

大白 是的,长官。他说的是事……实。

Hiro What the . . . What's wrong with you?

小宏 怎么……你怎么了?

Baymax Looowww baaatteerryyy . . .

大白 电电电量不足……

Desk Sergeant Kid, how about we call your parents and get them down

here . . .

接待警员 孩子,我们还是打电话让你家长来一趟吧……

kabuki (日本)歌舞伎/miniature 小型的/ESP 特异功能

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Let me get this straight. 让我理清一下思路。

get ... straight 是 "了解……,明白……"的意思。口语中,当你想要说明一些事情的时候可以使用这个表达,常用于句首。如:

- ► Let me get this straight, full speed isn't high speed. 我说明白点,全速不是高速。
- ▶ Let me get this straight, quality is more important than quantity. 我说明白点,质量比数量更重要。
- ▶ Let me get this straight, you hurt her but you didn't mean to do it? 我说明白点,你伤到了她,但是你不是故意的?

另外,这个表达还可以用在书面语中。如:

▶ We've never been able to get that straight. 我们从来没说那么明白过。

file a report 报案

file 是"提交,提出"的意思; file a report 本意是"提交报告",此处根据语境引申为"报案"。关于 file 的其他词组还有:

- ▶ file a claim 填报申请表格(以要求付款、求偿等)
- ▶ file a complaint 填投诉建议表
- ▶ file a bug report 提交错误报告

3 What's wrong with you? 你怎么了?

这句话通常情况下意思为"你怎么了",表示对他人的关心。但是如果说话人很生气, What's wrong with you? 的言外之意是"你有病吧"。它的同义句是 What's the matter with you?



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

How about . . .? ……怎么样? (常用来询问身体状况或反问别人。)

-		٠,	_		٠.
	•		=		•
		•	_	•	-
		,	٠.		
	•	54			
			ш		

- 1. How about your cat? 你的猫怎么样?
- 2. How about him? 他怎么样?
- 3. How about Owen? 欧文怎么样?
- 4. _____ your grandparents? 你祖父母怎么样?
- 5. you? 你怎么样?

How about +doing sth.? 做……怎么样? (常用来征求意见。)

- 1. How about riding a bike? 骑自行车怎么样?
- How about going swimming? 去游泳怎么样?
- 3. How about having a picnic by the lake? 去湖边野餐怎么样?
- 4. How about ______ now? 现在踢足球怎么样?
- 5. How about _____ at seven o'clock tomorrow morning? 明早七点起床怎么样?

STEP

A: What's wrong with you?

你怎么了?

B: I failed my oral English exam. 我英语口语考试没及格。

- A: How about practicing English with me from now on? 从今往后我陪你练习英语怎么样?
- B: Good idea. Thank you. 好主意。谢谢你。

KEYS

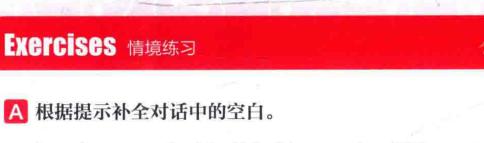
Step 1 4. How about

Step 1

4. playing football

5. How about

5. getting up



1777/1774 7 11 ===	No. of the second secon			
Desk Sergeant	So Mr. Kabuki was using ESP to attack you and balloon			
	man ① (你报过案吗) when your			
	flying robots were stolen?			
Hiro	No, I thought they were all destroyed. Look, I know			
	②(听起来是有点不可思议) but Baymax			
	was there too. Tell him.			
Baymax	Yes, officer			
Hiro	What the ④ (你怎么了) ?			
Baymax	Low battery.			
	(*) * (*)			
Desk Sergeant	Kid, how about we call your parents and get them down			
	here?			
根据汉语句子将	将下面的英文句子补充完整。			
①我说明一下,	你是认为这项工作太难以致于我们无法完成吗?			
	, you think this work is too difficult for us			
to finish?				
②你们报案了吗	马?			
Did you	?			
③在学校门口」				
	at the school gate?			

KEYS A ① Did you file a report ② it sounds crazy ③He is telling the truth ④ What's wrong with you

B \bigcirc Let me get it straight \bigcirc file a report \bigcirc How about meeting

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

电话提示常用句:

- 1 Low battery. 电量不足。
- Sorry, the number you dialed does not exist. Please check it and dial later.

对不起! 您所拨打的号码是空号, 请核对后再拨。

- **3** Sorry, the subscriber you dialed is not available. 对不起! 您所拨打的电话号码不可用。
- 4 Sorry, the subscriber you dialed cannot be connected at the moment. Please dial the number again later.
 对不起!您拨打的用户暂时无法接通,请稍后再拨。
- 5 Sorry, your telephone charge is overdue. Please submit payment to continue, thank you! 对不起! 您的电话已欠费,请您续交话费,谢谢!
- 6 Sorry, your telephone service is suspended. For more information, please dial 10086.
 对不起! 您的电话已停机。详情请垂询10086。
- **7** Sorry, the number you dialed is out of service. 对不起! 您拨打的电话已停机。
- 8 Please hold on. The subscriber you dialed is busy now. 请不要挂机,您拨打的电话正在通话中。

Unit 22 Take Baymax Home 带大白回家



大白快没电了, 小宏决定带大白回家充电。为了避免卡斯阿姨询 问,小宏让大白藏起来。无奈呆萌的大白却不断说错话弄出声响, 害得小宏一而再再而三提醒大白注意。而同时,卡斯阿姨也只当小 宏今天是去学校注册了,还十分欣喜。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 things like that
- 2 hear about
- 3 have sth. done
- 4 catch up on





Screen English 情景再现

Baymax We jumped out of a window.

大白 我们从窗户跳了下来。

Hiro You can't say things like that around Aunt Cass. Shhh . . .

小宏 你可不能这么跟卡斯阿姨说。嘘……

Baymax Shhh ...

大白 嘘……

Aunt Cass Hiro? You home, sweetie?

卡斯阿姨 小宏?你回来了,亲爱的?

Hiro Uh, that's right!

小宏 嗯,是的!

Aunt Cass I thought I heard you. Hey!

卡斯阿姨 就知道我没听错。嘿!

Hiro Hey, Aunt Cass.

小宏 嘿,卡斯阿姨。

Aunt Cass Oh, look at my little college man. Ah, I can't wait to hear

all about it. Oh, and wings are almost ready.

卡斯阿姨哦,看看我的小大学生。啊,我迫不及待地想听你在学校的一切。哦,鸡翅马上就

好喽。

Baymax Wiiiiings!

大白 鸡翅!

Hiro Will you be quiet?

小宏 你能安静会儿吗?

Aunt Cass Yeah! Wiiiings! Wee-ooh. All right, get ready to have your

face melted. We are gonna feel these things tomorrow. Do you

know what I'm saying? Okay, sit down, tell me everything.

卡斯阿姨 没错!鸡翅!哇哦!好了,来大吃一顿吧!明天就会感觉到这酸爽了。你知道我在

说什么吧?好吧,坐下来都告诉我。

Hiro Um, the thing is . . . since I registered so late, I've got a lot

of school stuff to catch up on.

小宏 嗯,情况是这样的……因为我注册得太晚了,我有很多功课要赶上。

register 注册

Oral English 口语知识点



1 hear about 听说

hear about 表示"听说", hear of 也表示"听说"。两者区别在于 hear about 后面常跟事件之类的名词, hear of 后面常跟人或事物。另外, 前者表示听说, 后者表示非常了解。如:

- ▶ I've just heard about her success. 我刚听说她取得成功的事。
- ▶ Do you hear the latest news about Li Jian? 你听到有关李健的最新消息了吗?
- ▶ I heard of her yesterday. 我昨天听说她了。
- ▶ The master was never heard of again. 再没有听说过师傅的消息了。

hear from 则表示"收到……的来信"。如:

▶ I heard from my students on Teachers' Day. 教师节那天我收到了学生写的信。

2 have sth. done 某物被 ······

have sth. 后面可以跟动词的各种不同形式。sth. 和动作是被动关系时用 have sth. done, sth. 和动作是主动关系时用 have sth. do, sth. 和动作是主动关系且持续进行时用 have sth. doing, 表示"有事要完成"用 have sth. to do/to be done。如:

- ▶ I have these vegetables shipped in from Anhui province. 我有些蔬菜从安徽省船运过来。
- ▶ My father had me repair the bike. 我爸爸让我修自行车。
- ▶ He has me doing my homework all day. 他让我写了一整天的作业。
- ▶ I have some letters to write. 我需要写一些信。
- ▶ I have some tables to be refinished. 我有一些桌子要重新修理。

3 catch up on 赶上; 弥补

catch 有"追赶"的意思, catch up on 表示"赶上; 弥补"。如:

- ▶ I will catch up on my deskmate this term. 这学期我要赶上我的同桌。
- ▶ We must catch up on that trend. 我们必须赶上那个趋势。
- ▶ You'd better catch up on your sleep. 你最好补上一觉。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

things like that 像那样的事

STEP

- 1. Don't do things like that! 别做那种事!
- 2. How do the scientists explain things like that? 科学家们是如何解释那种事的呢?
- 3. The little things like that can help us protect the environment. 像那些小事情有助于我们保护环境。
- 4. Only the childish adults do _____. 幼稚的成年人才做那种事。
- 5. It seems that people like to talk about ______. 貌似人们喜欢讨论那种事。

STEP 2

things like + sth./v.-ing 像……的事情

- 1. Reporters should check before they report things like this. 记者报道这种事情之前应该查一下。
- 2. Did she do things like bottling fruit or making jam? 她干过将水果装瓶或做果酱之类的活计吗?
- 3. Do you like to make things like a tank with the mud? 你想要用泥做些东西吗, 比如坦克?
- 4. Most girls care about ______ beauty and stature. 大多数女孩关心美丽和身材这些事。
- 5. I know you will take ______ this. 我知道你会拿走这种东西的。

STEP

3

A: Don't do things like that! 别做那样的事!

B: Why? 为什么?

A: It seems too silly. 看起来太傻了。

KEYS Step 1 4. things like that

5. things like

5. things like that

Step 1 4. things like



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

	Baymax	We jumped out of a window.
	Hiro	You can't say
		Aunt Cass. Shhh
	Baymax	Shhh
		Hiro? You home, sweetie?
	Hiro	Uh, that's right!
		I thought I heard you. Hey!
	Hiro	Hey, Aunt Cass.
		Oh, look at my little college man. Ah, I② (迫
	riant Gaoo	不及待地) hear all about it. Oh, and wings are almost ready.
	Baymax	Wiiiiings!
	Hiro	Will you be quiet?
	Aurit Cass	Yeah! Wiiiings! Wee-ooh. All right, get ready to 3
		(it) your face melted. We are gonna feel these things
		tomorrow. Do you know what I'm saying? Okay, sit down, tell
	1.65	me everything.
	Hiro	Um, the thing is since I registered so late, I've got a lot of
		school stuff to ④ (弥补).
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①我修理	了自行车。
	I had th	ne bike
		努力工作,以弥补逝去的时光。
	She	the lost time by working harder.
		我迫不及待地跑回家。
	After so	chool I run home.
KEY	/S A ①t	hings like that ② can't wait to ③ have ④ catch up on

B 1 repaired 2 catches up on 3 can't wait to

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

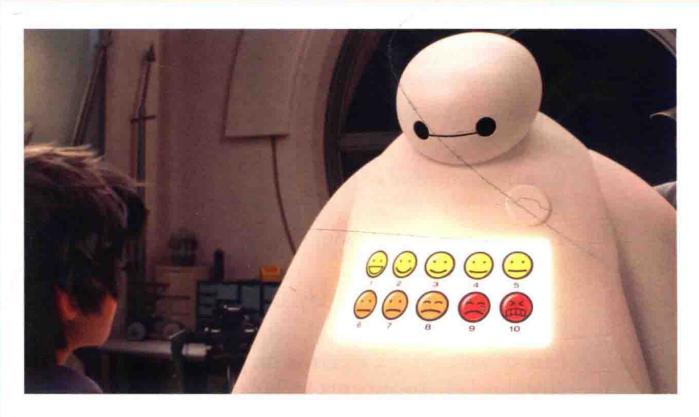
你眼中的家人:

- 1 My grandfather is a generous person. 我的祖父很慷慨。
- 2 I admire my father. 我敬佩我的父亲。
- **3** My father is a silent, austere man. 我父亲是一位沉默而严格的人。
- 4 My father is a family-centered person. 我父亲很顾家。
- **5** He's a wonderful father. 他是一位了不起的父亲。
- My mother always grumbled about being chained down by housework.

 我母亲老是抱怨她被家务束缚住了。
- 7 My mother works very hard, yet without complaining. 我的母亲总是勤勤恳恳,任劳任怨。
- 8 You take after your father. 你长得像你的父亲。
- You're the spitting image of your mother. 你真像你母亲。
- 10 She's got her mother's nose. 她的鼻子很像她母亲的。

Maybe It's Not an Accident

也许不是意外



泰迪的死让小宏痛心不已, 窝心的大白想尽办法帮助小宏疗伤。他 下载了治疗伤心的数据库,并根据数据库中的治疗方法联系了小宏 的朋友。大白的拥抱让小宏感觉舒心。谈起泰迪时, 小宏突然想到 这可能不是场意外,而是和面具人以及微型机器人有关……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 keep saying
- 2 as long as we remember
- 3 see no evidence of
- 4 a different kind of



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Baymax Tadashi is here.

大白 泰迪就在这里。

Hiro No, people keep saying he's not really gone as long as we

remember him. It still hurts . . .

小宏 没有,虽然大家都说只要我们还记得他,他就不是真的消失了。但还是很痛……

Baymax I see no evidence of physical injury.

大白 我没有检测到伤口。

Hiro It's a different kind of hurt.

小宏 那是另外一种伤痛。

Baymax You are my patient. I would like to help.

大白 你是我的病人,我想帮助你。

Hiro You can't fix this one, buddy. Uh, what are you doing?

小宏 这个你治不了,老兄。啊,你在做什么?

Baymax I am downloading a database on personal loss. Database

downloaded. Treatments include: contact with friends

and loved ones. I am contacting them now.

大白 我在下载伤心病治疗的数据库。数据库下载完成。治疗方法包括:与朋友、爱人进

行联系。我正在和他们取得联络。

Hiro No, no, no . . . I . . . don't do that.

小宏 不,不,不,不……我……别那么做。

Baymax Your friends have been contacted.

大白 已经联络过你的朋友了。

Hiro Unbelievable. Now what are you doing?

小宏 难以置信。你现在在做什么?

Baymax Other treatments include: compassion and physical

reassurance.

大白 其他治疗方法包括关怀和安抚。

Hiro I'm okay. Really.

小宏 我没事。真的。

database 数据库 / contact 联系 / reassurance 安抚

Oral English 口语知识点



1 keep saying . . . 一直说……

People keep saying he's not really gone. 句意是"人们一直说他并没有真正离去"。 saying 后省略了 that。keep saying (that) 后面跟宾语从句,表明人们一直说的内容。类似的句子还有:

- ▶ People keep saying I've changed. 人们一直说我变了。
- ▶ People keep saying that you and I are crazy. 人们一直说你和我疯了。
- ▶ Why does everyone keep saying that? 为什么每个人都一直说那事?

2 see no evidence of . . . 没发现……的证据

I see no evidence of physical injury. 句意是"我没发现人身伤害的迹象"。see no evidence of . . . 相当于 not see the evidence that . . . 类似的句子还有:

- ▶ I see no evidence of any cancer. 我没发现癌症的迹象。
- ▶ I see no evidence of any decline in quality. 我没找到质量下降的证据。

3 a different kind of . . . 不同类型的……

It's a different kind of hurt. 句意 "它是一种不同的伤害"。类似的句子还有:

- ▶ It's a different kind of war. 它是另一种战争。
- ▶ It's a different kind of beauty. 它是另一种美。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

As long as we remember . . . 只要我们记着……



- 1. Nothing is ever really lost as long as we remember it. 只要我们记得,没有什么会真正逝去。
- 2. As long as we remember him, he will never die. 只要我们记着他, 他就不会死去。
- 3. They will live as long as we remember them. 只要我们记着他们,他们就活着。
- 4. The rabbit will never die ______. 只要我们记着它,兔子就不会死去。
- 5. _______, we could not lose each other. 只要我们记得,我们就不会失去彼此。

2 2

as long as 只要 ······

- 1. I don't care who you are or what you did, as long as you love me. 只要你爱我,我不在乎你是谁或你做过什么。
- 2. David will stay as long as he is wanted. 只要需要戴维, 他就留下。
- 3. It does not matter how slowly you go as long as you do not stop. 只要你坚持走,多慢都没关系。
- 4. My dog behaves well ______ I remember to walk her. 只要我记得带狗狗散步,我的狗就表现很规矩。
- 5. I feel happy _____ she smiles at me. 只要她朝我笑, 我就开心。

STEP

- A: I'll never forget those cold words as long as I live. 只要活着,我就不会忘记那些叫人心寒的话。
- B: I am really sorry for hurting you. Please forgive me. 伤害到你我真的很抱歉。请原谅我。
- A: Do you mean it? 你真的这样想?

KEYS

- Step 1 4. as long as we remember it
- 5. As long as we remember

Step 2 4. as long as

5. as long as

Exercises 情境练习



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

Baymax	Tadashi is here.		
Hiro	No,		
	long as we remember him. It still hurts		
Baymax	②(我没发现······证据)physical injury.		
Hiro	It's a different kind of hurt.		
Baymax	You are my patient. I ③ (想要) to help.		
Hiro	You can't fix this one, buddy. Uh, what are you doing?		
Baymax I am downloading a database on personal loss. Da			
	downloaded. Treatments include: contact with friends and		
	loved ones. I am contacting them now.		
Hiro	No, no, no, no I don't do that.		
Baymax	Your friends ④ (已经联系过).		
Hiro	Unbelievable. Now what are you doing?		
Baymax	Other treatments include: compassion and physical		
	reassurance.		
Hiro	I'm okay. Really.		
根据汉语句	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。		
①在朋友们的帮助下,我通过了考试。			
With, I passed the exam.			
②只要你在工作中发现乐趣就可以。			
That's C	OK you find enjoyment in your work.		
③只要我们	门一起努力,我们就能获得成功。		
	we work together, we will make it.		

KEYS

- A ① people keep saying ② I see no evidence of ③ would like
 - 4 have been contacted
- B ① the help of my friends ② as long as ③ As long as

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

描述生病的症状:

- 1 My whole body feels weak. 我觉得浑身无力。
- 2 I'm totally flustered. 我心慌意乱。
- **3** My head feels like it's going to explode. 我头疼死了。
- 4 My nose is plugged up. 我鼻子不通气。
- My hearing is going. 我的听力越来越差。
- My gums are bleeding. 我的牙龈出血。
- My tooth has been hurting all day. 我的牙疼了一整天。
- My eyes itch. 我的眼睛很痒。

- 9 I have a sore throat. 我喉咙疼。
- 10 I have a terrible cough. 我咳得很厉害。
- 11 My chest feels constricted. 我觉得胸闷憋气。
- 12 I have a stomachache. 我胃痛。
- 13 I sprained my ankle. 我的脚崴了。



Unit 24 Update Baymax 升级大白



小宏一心想抓住蒙面人, 所以决定给大白升级。大白向小宏确认抓 住蒙面人可以改善小宏的情绪波动症状后同意了升级。升级后的大 白拥有一身好功夫,简直无所不能。大白还穿上了一身坚硬的盔 甲,与之前纯良无害的形象大相径庭。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 If we're gonna . . .
- 2 take care of
- 3 may undermine
- 4 fail to see







Screen English 情景再现

Hiro If we're gonna catch that guy, you need some upgrades.

小宏要想抓住那家伙,就得给你升升级。

Baymax Will apprehending the man in the mask improve your

emotional state?

大白 抓到蒙面人能改善你的情绪吗?

Hiro Absolutely. Let's work on your moves. Now, let's take care

of this.

小宏当然。来学点儿功夫吧。这儿也要改进改进。

Baymax I have some concerns. This armor may undermine my

non-threatening huggable design.

大白 我有一些担忧。这盔甲破坏了我可爱无害的设计。

Hiro That's kind of the idea, buddy. You look sick.

小宏要的就是这个,伙计。你帅呆了。

Baymax I cannot be sick. I'm a robot.

大白 我不会生病。我是机器人。

Hiro It's just an expression.

小宏 只是打个比方啦。

Computer Data transfer complete.

电脑数据传输完成。

Baymax I fail to see how karate makes me a better health-care

companion.

大白 我不懂空手道如何让我成为更好的健康顾问。

Hiro You want to keep me healthy, don't you? Punch this. Yes!

Hammer fist! Side kick! Knife hand! Back kick! Gummy

Bears! Yes! Yeah, fist bump!

小宏 你想让我保持健康,不是吗?打它。好!锤拳!侧踢!掌刀!后踢!小熊软糖!好

样的! 对的,碰拳!

Baymax "Fist bump" is not in my fighting database.

大白 碰拳不在我的战斗数据库里。

apprehend 逮捕 / armor 盔甲 / huggable 逗人喜爱的 / karate 空手道 / hammer 铁锤

Oral English 口语知识点



1 take care of 注意; 照顾, 照料; 保管, 保护

take care of 在本节中是"注意"的意思。

- ▶ take care of 还可以作"照顾,照料"讲,这时它的同义词组是 look after。如: Let's take care of each other. = Let's look after each other. (让我们互相照顾吧。)
- ▶ take good care of则表示"好好照顾",其同义短语是look after well。如: Don't worry. I can take good care of your pet when you are not home. = Don't worry. I can look after your pet well when you are not home. (别担心,你不在家的时候我会好好照顾你的宠物的。)
- ▶ take care of 还有"保管,保护"的意思;而 look after 没有。如: Let's take care of our culture. (让我们保护我们的文化。)

2 may undermine 可能破坏

undermine 有"逐渐削弱,逐渐动摇,破坏"的意思。如: These habits may undermine your relationship. (这些习惯可能会破坏你们的关系。)

3 fail to see 不明白;看不到

fail to do 有"失败,未做成"的意思。fail to see 就是"没有明白"的意思,如:

- ▶ I fail to see how this would benefit you. 我不明白这能给你带来什么好处。
- ► I fail to see how you work it out. 我不知道你怎么算出来的。

fail 后面可以直接加名词,表示"做某事失败/未成功"。如:

- ▶ I failed to lose weight. I tried my best though. 尽管我尽力了,但还是减肥失败了。
- ▶ I failed the math exam. 我数学考试没及格。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

If we're gonna . . . 如果我们要……



- 1. If we are gonna catch this guy, I need to know everything about him. 如果我们想抓住这家伙, 我得了解关于他的一切事情。
- 2. If we're gonna catch that clown, he mustn't know that we are on to him. 如果我们要抓那个小丑,干万不能让他知道我们想抓他。
- 3. ______ him, we at least need to figure out what he's after. 如果我们想抓住他,我们至少得清楚他在找寻什么。
- 4. We'd better get going now ______ the train. 如果我们想赶上火车,我们最好现在就出发。

STEP 2

If you're gonna . . . 如果你要……

- If you're gonna catch her, you'd better hurry.
 如果你想赶上她,你最好快点。
- If you're gonna catch fish, you need bait. 如果你想捕鱼, 你就得用饵。
- 3. You've got to fish where the fish are ______ them. 如果你想抓鱼,你必须在有鱼的地方捕鱼。
- 4. You need to get going ______ your flight. 如果你想赶上你的航班,你得出发了。

STEP 3

- A: If we are going to catch that train, we should hurry. 如果我们想赶上火车,我们必须快点。
- B: Don't worry. We've got plenty of time. 别担心。我们有很多时间。
- A: Really? 真的吗?

KEYS Step 1 3. If we're gonna catch Step 2 3. if you're gonna catch

- 4. if we're gonna catch
- 4. if you're gonna catch

Exercises 情境练习

KEYS

Α	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。	
	Hiro	If we're gonna catch that guy, you need some①(升级).	
	Baymax	Will apprehending the man in the mask②(改善) your	
		emotional state?	
	Hiro	Absolutely. Let's work on your moves. Now, let's	
	Baymax	I have some concerns. This armor may④ (破坏)	
		my non-threatening huggable design.	
	Hiro	That's kind of the idea, buddy. You look sick.	
	Baymax	I cannot be sick. I'm a robot.	
	Hiro	It's just an expression.	
	Computer	Data transfer complete.	
	Baymax	I⑤ (没有发现) how karate makes me a better	
		health-care companion.	
	Hiro	You want to keep me healthy, don't you? Punch this. Yes!	
		Hammer fist! Side kick! Knife hand! Back kick! Gummy Bears!	
		Yes! Yeah, fist bump!	
	Baymax	"Fist bump" is not in my fighting database.	
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。	
	①当人们不安于现实的时候就这么做。		
	when they don't want to stay in reality.		
	②人们言行不一。		
	What p	eople say is not	
		心孩子的幸福。	
	The hap	opiness of the child is a mother's	

A ① upgrades ② improve ③ take care of ④ undermine ⑤ fail to see

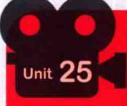
B 1 It's what people do 2 what they do 3 concern

Cultural Tips 文化小贴士

武术

中国武术历史悠久,讲究刚柔并济、内外兼修。代表武术有太极拳、形意拳、八卦拳等。西方武术讲究竞技,动作比较简单。代表武术有搏击、剑道等。中国武术讲求静,西方武术讲求术,善于进攻。正因为西方武术的灵魂是进攻,所以不断的竞技比赛使得其传承较好。中国传统武术传承相对来说不尽如人意。但是,中国正在将传统武术与搏击结合,以便将传统武术发扬光大,使其走向世界。李小龙、成龙、李连杰、甄子丹主演的电影让西方人对中国武术越来越感兴趣。如果你准备出国留学,不妨学习一些中国武术,宣传祖国武术文化的同时还可以多多结识外国朋友。





Four Puzzled Future Superheroes 不解的未来四侠



大白之前联系了朋友为小宏疗伤,尽管小宏一再推辞,重义气的朋友们还是应邀而来。而他们正好出现在小宏和大白去寻找面具男的路上。大白穿着碳纤维内裤见到了小宏的朋友们,他们感到又好笑又疑惑。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 time to use . . .
- 2 Why is he wearing . . .
- 3 We're here for you.
- 4 It has been thirty days since . . .



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Okay, Baymax, time to use those upgrades.

小宏 好了,大白,该试试刚才的升级了。

. . .

Wasabi Dude, what are you doing out here?

芥末无疆 伙计,你在这儿做什么?

Hiro Nothing. Just stop for a walk. Helps my pubescent mood swings.

小宏 没什么。只是过来散散步。有助于平息我的青春期情绪波动。

Wasabi Is that Baymax?

芥末无疆 那是大白吗?

Hiro Yeah, but you really . . .

小宏 是的,可是你们真的……

Go Go Uh . . . why is he wearing carbon fibre underpants?

神行御姐 呃……他怎么穿着碳纤维内裤?

Baymax I also know karate.

大白 我还会空手道。

Hiro You guys need to go.

小宏 你们快走吧!

Honey Lemon No, don't push us away, Hiro. We're here for you. That's

why Baymax contacted us.

哈妮柠檬 不要,别把我们支走,小宏。我们是为你而来,这也是大白联系我们的原因。

Baymax Those who suffer a loss require support from friends and

loved ones.

大白 痛失所爱的人需要朋友和爱人的支持。

Hiro Okay, but I 好的, 但是我……

Baymax Who would like to share their feelings first?

大白 谁想第一个来分享他的感受?

Fred Ooh, I'll go! Okay, my name is Fred, and it has been

thirty days since my last . . .

弗雷德 哦,我来吧!好吧,我叫弗雷德,这得从三十天前说起……

carbon fibre 碳纤维 / require 需要

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Why is he wearing . . .? 他为什么穿着……?

wear 意思是"穿,戴,佩戴",穿校服、戴眼镜、佩戴玉佩等都用这个词。如:

- ▶ We have to wear uniforms to school from Monday to Friday. 周一到周五我们都得穿校服去学校。
- ▶ Why is he wearing sunglasses at night? 他为什么在夜里戴着太阳镜?
- ▶ Why is he wearing a gas mask? 他为什么戴着防毒面具?
- ▶ He is wearing a heavy crown. 他戴着沉甸甸的王冠。

2 We're here for you. 我们是为你而来。

We're here for . . . 是常用的英语口语,表示"我们为……而来,我们在这里等……"。如:

- ▶ We're here for a good time. 我们在这里度过快乐时光。
- ▶ We're here for the students preparing for college entrance exams.
 我们在这里等备战高考的学生。

3 It has been thirty days since . . . 自从……已经三十天了。

since 意思是"自从",引导的从句用一般过去时态,主句用现在完成时态。如:

- ▶ I haven't seen her since she went to America. 自从她去美国后我就没有见过她。
- ▶ I haven't heard any noise since I woke up. 我醒后还未听到任何声音。
- ▶ She has helped me with my math since I fell ill. 自从我生病以来她就一直在帮我补习数学。
- ▶ It has been a long time since I studied painting. 我学画画很久了。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

Time to use . . . 是时候使用……

Į,	S	П	ı	8	۲
		Č	4		
			П		
			П		

- 1. Time to use force. 是时候使用武力了。
- 2. Time to use a little common sense. 是时候用点常识了。
- 3. Time to use your heads. 是时候动动脑子了。
- 4. _____ your authority. 是时候动用你的权力了。
- 5. _____ these unused vacation days. 是时候休假了。

STEP

It's time to do sth. 做某事的时候到了

- 1. It's time to say good-bye to you. 是时候说再见了。
- 2. It's time to change your lifestyle. 是时候改变你的生活方式了。
- 3. It's time to listen. 是时候倾听了。
- 4. ______ wonder if they really are your friends. 是时候该想想他们是不是你真正的朋友了。
- 5. _____ fight back. 是时候反击了。

STEP

- A: It's time to use your imagination. 是时候发挥你的想象力了。
- B: Sorry, I'm not very imaginative. 对不起,我想象力不是很丰富。
- A: Oh, come on. We all count on you. 拜托。你是我们唯一的希望。

KEYS

Step 1

4. Time to use

Step 1

4. It's time to

5. Time to use

5. It's time to

Exercises 情境练习



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

②为什么她喜极而泣?

You don't need ____

③你没必要道歉。

Why is she _____?

	Hiro	Okay, Baymax, time to use those upgrades.	

	Wasabi	Dude, what are you doing out here?	
	Hiro	Nothing. Just	
		my pubescent mood swings.	
	Wasabi	Is that Baymax?	
	Hiro	Yeah, but you really	
	Go Go	Uh Why ② (他穿着) carbon fibre underpants?	
	Baymax	I also know karate.	
	Hiro	You guys need to go.	
	Honey Lemon	No, don't push us away, Hiro. We're here ③ (为了	
你). That's why Baymax contacted us.			
	Baymax	Those who suffer a loss④ (需要支持)	
from friends and loved ones.		from friends and loved ones.	
	Hiro	Okay, but I	
	Baymax	Who would like to share their feelings first?	
	Fred	Ooh, I'll go! Okay, my name is Fred, and it has been thirty	
		days since my last	
B 根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。			
	① 谁想和我有同样的梦想?		
share a dream with me?			

KEYS A ① stop for a walk ② is he wearing ③ for you ④ require support

B ① Who would like to ② crying with joy ③ to apologize

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

千言万语话友情:

- 1 I have a lot of close friends. 我有很多好朋友。
- He's been a good friend through thick and thin. 他一直是一位同甘共苦的好朋友。
- **3** We used to be good friends, but fell apart. 我们本来是好朋友,但现在关系破裂了。
- 4 You and I used to be inseparable. 你和我曾经那么形影不离。
- 5 You can count on me for anything. 我的朋友, 我愿为你做任何事情。
- Mary is a great friend to have. 有玛丽这样的朋友真是太好了。
- 7 I'm so lucky to have a friend like you. 有你这样的朋友真是幸运。
- 8 We're the closest of friends. 我们是最亲密的朋友。
- She's like a sister to me. 她对我像是姐姐似的。
- We're like brothers. 我们就像兄弟一样。
- Only a true friend would be that cruelly honest. 只有真正的朋友才会直言不讳。
- 12 It's no wonder you don't have any friends. 难怪你没有任何朋友。



Unit 26 A Car Chase 汽车追逐战



小宏、他的朋友和大白被戴面具的坏蛋追,情急之下他们只能拼命 开车逃跑。而作为司机的芥末无疆在这么危急的情况下还谨记交通 规则,这使得众人十分无奈。神行御姐夺过控制权,猛踩油门,汽 车猛地向前冲去……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 under attack from
- 2 I mean
- 3 There be . . .
- 4 try to do sth.
- 5 jump to conclusions



预习本节精彩电影对白

Screen English 情景再现

Go Go Hard left!

神行御姐 左急转!

Fred That mask. Black suit. We are under attack from a super-

villain, people! I mean, how cool is that! I mean, it's

scary, obviously. But how cool!

弗雷德 那个面具,加上黑衣服。我们正受到一个超级大坏蛋的攻击,伙计们!我想说,太

酷了吧! 我是说,虽然很可怕,可是还是很酷啊!

Go Go Why are we stopped?

神行御姐 干吗停车?

Wasabi The light's red!

芥末无疆 现在是红灯。

Go Go There are no red lights in a car chase!

神行御姐 都被追成这样了还管什么红灯!

Wasabi Why is he trying to kill us? Why are you trying to kill us?

芥末无疆 为什么他要杀我们?你为什么要杀我们?

Fred It's classic villain! We've seen too much!

弗雷德 因为他是典型的坏人! 我们知道得太多了!

Honey Lemon Let's not jump to conclusions—we don't know he is

trying to kill us.

哈妮柠檬 不要轻易下结论,他不一定要杀我们呢!

Fred Car! 弗雷德 看车!

Honey Lemon He is trying to kill us!

哈妮柠檬 他正想尽办法杀我们!

Go Go Did you just put your blinker on?

神行御姐 你刚刚是把转向灯打开了吗?

Wasabi You have to indicate your turn! It's the law!

芥末无疆 转弯之前一定要开转向灯!这是规定!

Go Go That's it. 神行御姐 我受不了了。

scary 可怕的 / car chase 汽车追逐 / blinker 闪光灯 / indicate 指示

Oral English 口语知识点



1 under attack from 遭受……的袭击

under 意为"在……之下", attack 作名词时意为"袭击", under attack from 意为"遭受……的袭击"。如:

- ▶ We're under attack from a monster. 我们正受到怪兽袭击。
- ▶ We're under attack from foreign and domestic enemies. 我们受到国内外敌人的袭击。
- ▶ They are under attack from the light. 他们遭受光的袭击。

另外, 成语"四面受敌"的英文表达是 under attack from all directions。

2 I mean 我是说

I mean 是常用的口语之一,用来表述自己的观点。如:

- ▶ I mean, it's sad, obviously. 我是说,这显然很让人伤心。
- ▶ I mean, it's wrong, obviously. 我是说,这显然是错的。

3 try to do sth. 设法做某事,尽力做某事

try to do sth. 意思是"设法做某事,尽力做某事",侧重尽力,为达到目的而努力; try doing sth. 意思是"试着做某事",侧重尝试,并没有目的性。如:

- ▶ Why are you trying to change me? 为什么你要设法改变我呢?
- ▶ Why is he trying to get my attention? 为什么他尽力吸引我的注意呢?
- ► Can I try doing research? 我能试着做研究吗?
- ▶ The child is trying to dress himself. 这个孩子正尝试着自己穿衣服。

4 jump to conclusions 草率下结论

jump 意思是"跳",用在这里表示心里着急,所以jump to conclusion言外之意就是跳过论证环节而直接下结论了,我们可以理解为"匆忙下结论"。如:

- ▶ He urged people not to jump to conclusions. 他劝人们不要草率下结论。
- ▶ I hate people who jump to conclusions. 我讨厌草率下结论的人。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

There are . . . 有+复数可数名词……

STEP

- 1. There are many people in the park. 公园里有很多人。
- 2. There are some pencils and an eraser on the desk. 书桌上有一些铅笔和一块橡皮。
- 3. There are five birds on the roof. 房顶上有五只鸟。

4. _____ some flowers on the floor. 地板上有一些花。

5. _____ three rabbits in my grandma's house. 奶奶家有三只兔子。

STEP 2 There is . . . 有+单数名词/不可数名词……

- 1. There is some water in the bottle. 瓶子里有一些水。
- 2. There is an apple on the table. 桌子上有一个苹果。
- 3. There is a football and three tennis balls under the bed. 床下有一个足球和三个网球。

4. _____ some fish in the kitchen. 厨房里有一些鱼肉。

5. ______ no reason for you to be late for school. 你没有理由上学迟到。

STEP 3 A: Is there anything to eat? 有什么吃的吗?

B: No, there isn't. 不, 没有。

A: Oh, then let's eat out. 哦, 那我们去外面吃吧。

KEYS Step 1 4. There are Step 2 4. There is

5. There are

5. There is

Exercises 情境练习



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

Go Go	Hard left!		
Fred	That mask. Black suit. We are ① (遭受来		
	自······的袭击) a super-villain, people! I mean, how cool is that! I		
	mean, it's scary, obviously. But how cool!		
Go Go	Why are we stopped?		
Wasabi	The light's red!		
Go Go	②(没有) red lights in a car chase!		
Wasabi	Why is he trying to kill us? Why are you trying to kill us?		
Fred	It's classic villain! We've seen too much!		
Honey Lemon	Let's not		
	he is trying to kill us.		
Fred	Car!		
Honey Lemon	He is trying to kill us!		
Go Go	Did you just put your blinker on?		
Wasabi	You have to indicate your turn! ④ (这是规定)!		
Go Go	That's it.		
根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。		
①那个政治	台家遭到了对手的攻击。		
The politician came his opponent.			
②为什么你要想尽办法控制我?			
control me?			
③我不知道她是谁。			
I don't know			

- KEYS
- A ① under attack from ② There are no ③ jump to conclusions
 - 4 It's the law
- B ① under attack from ② Why are you trying to ③ who she is

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

当司机遇上交警:

- 1 I'm going to give you a ticket. 我得给你开张罚单。
- Pull over to the curb. Slow it down. 把车停在路边。放慢速度。
- 3 Do you know why 1 pulled you over? 知道我拦你的原因吗?
- 4 Would you step out of the car please? 请下车。
- Do you have any idea how fast you were going? 你知道你刚才开得有多快吗?
- 6 May I see your driver's license? 能看一下你的驾照吗?
- **7** Can I see your proof of insurance? 你有保险凭证吗?
- **8** Do you even have a speedometer? 你这车有没有速度计?
- Where's the fire, buddy? 伙计, 开那么快要去救火吗?

- 10 I'm only going to give you a warning this time. 这次我只给你一个警告。
- 11 I'll let you off this time, but don't let it happen again. 这次我放你一马,但下不为例。
- Next time I'm taking you in. 要是让我再抓到,就请你去警局。
- 13 I'm taking you to the station. 我得把你带去警局。



Fred's Identity Is Exposed

弗雷德身份曝光



甩掉戴面具的疯子后,小宏他们按照弗雷德的提议来到一座豪宅。 豪宅里的人喊弗雷德"少爷",这可把小伙伴们惊呆了。弗雷德竟 然是豪宅里的公子哥。要不是有刚刚那段惊心动魄的经历,这简直 是今天最令人惊奇的消息了。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 get out of
- 2 in the mood
- 3 belong to
- 4 You gotta be kidding me.
- 5 I think this would be . . .



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro We should get out of here.

小宏 我们应该赶快离开这里。

Fred I know a place.

弗雷德 我知道个地方。

Hiro Fred? Where are you going?

小宏 弗雷德? 你要去哪里?

Fred Oh! Welcome to mi casa. That's French for "front door".

弗雷德 哦!欢迎来到"米卡莎",法语里是"前门"的意思。

. . .

Go Go Listen, nitwit, a lunatic in a mask just tried to kill us. I'm

not in the mood for any . . .

神行御姐 听着,笨蛋,一个戴面具的疯子刚刚想要杀了我们。我没心情和你胡闹……

Heathcliff Welcome home, Master Frederick.

希斯克利夫 欢迎回家,弗雷德里克少爷。

Fred Heathcliff, my man! Come on in, guys. We'll be safe in

here. Give me some.

弗雷德 希斯克利夫,老兄。快进来吧,伙计们。这里很安全。碰拳。

Honey Lemon Freddie, this is your house?

哈妮柠檬 弗雷德,这是你的房子吗?

Go Go I thought you lived under a bridge.

神行御姐 我还以为你住桥下呢。

Fred Well, technically it belongs to my parents. They are on a

vacay on the family island. You know we should totally

go sometime. Frolic.

弗雷德嗯,严格意义上来说,是我爸妈的房子。他们在我们家的岛上度假呢。你知道的,

我们该找个时间一起去那儿。去玩玩。

Go Go You gotta be kidding me.

神行御姐 你是在开玩笑吧。

Wasabi If I wasn't just attacked by a guy in a kabuki mask, I think

this would be the weirdest thing I've seen today.

芥末无疆要不是刚被一个戴歌舞伎面具的人袭击,这该是我今天看过的最奇怪的东西了。

lunatic 疯子 / technically 严格意义上地 / vacay 假期 / weird 怪异的

Oral English 口语知识点



1 get out of 出来; 逃避

get out of 意思是"出来;逃避"。如:

- ▶ Get out of there quickly! 快点离开那里!
- ▶ He often gets out of housework. 他经常逃避家务。

get 的相关词组还有:

- ▶ get on 上(车、船等), 骑上(马)等
- ▶ get off 从·····下来; 下车

▶ get up 起床

▶ get to 到达

2 in the mood 心情好

in the mood 表示"心情好,兴致勃勃",表示"心情不好"可以用 not in the mood。如:

▶ He is not in the mood today. 他今天心情不好。

表示"有心情做某事;想要做某事"可以用 in the mood for (doing) sth.。如:

- ▶ I'm not in the mood for my birthday. 我没有心情过生日。
- ► She is in the mood for painting. 她想要画画。

3 belong to 属于; 是……的成员; 与……有关系

belong to 的基本意思是"属于",不同语境下延伸义也不同。如:

- ▶ The robot belongs to Linda. 机器人是琳达的。
- ▶ I belong to the dance club. 我是舞蹈俱乐部的成员。
- ▶ As an actress, she really belongs to the eighteenth century. 作为演员, 她确实属于十八世纪。

4 You gotta be kidding me. 你在开玩笑吧。

You gotta be kidding me.=You have got to be kidding me. 是典型的 美式英语口语。文章中这句是比较口语化的说法,有时 me 也可省略。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I think this would be . . . 我觉得这将是……

STEP

- I think this would be one of the greatest inventions. 我觉得这将是最伟大的发明之一。
- 2. I think this would be very boring if you went on writing the novel like this. 我觉得如果你继续这么写小说将会很无趣。
- 3. I think this would be the last chance for us to stay together. 我觉得这将是我们最后一次有机会待在一起。

4 th	e worst plan	1. 我觉得这将是最糟糕的计划。
------	--------------	------------------

5. _____a great reversal. 我觉得这将是伟大的逆转。

STEP

This would . . . 这将 ·······

- 1. This would break the world record. 这将会打破世界纪录。
- 2. This would not only do harm to others but to ourselves as well. 这样损人也不利己。
- 3. This would allow us to buy two houses. 这将允许我们买两套房子。
- benefit the development of share market. 这将有利于股市健康发展。
- 5. _____ allow us to experience many different gyms. 这将允许我们体验多家不同的健身房。

- A: This would be the worst reform plan. 这将是最糟糕的改革方案。
- B: Really? 直的吗?
- A: Yes. I don't think it can be carried out. 是的。我觉得它不会实行的。

KEYS

Step 1 4. I think this would be

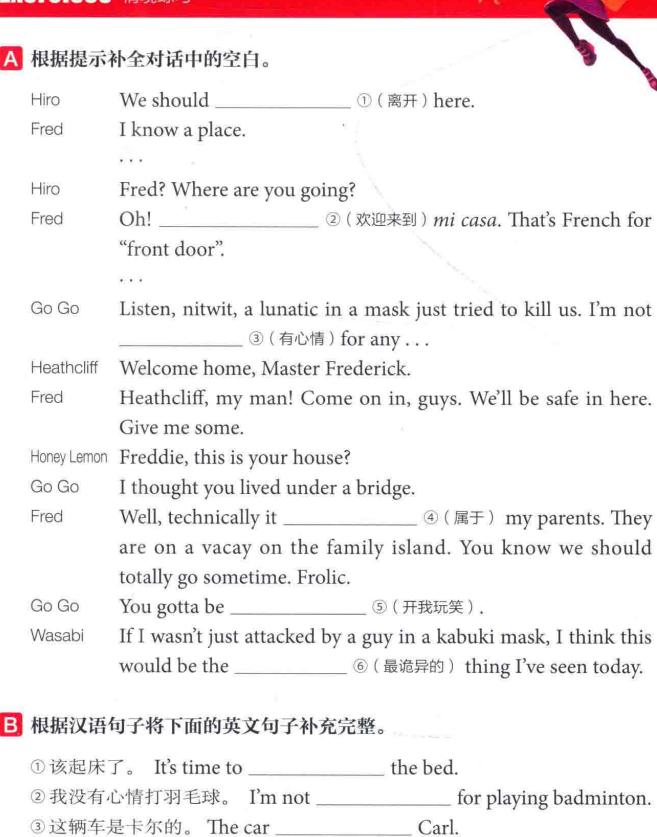
5 I think this would be

Step 2

4. This would

5 This would

Exercises 情境练习



KEYS A ① get out of ② Welcome to ③ in the mood ④ belongs to ⑤ kidding me ⑥ weirdest
B ① get out of ② in the mood ③ belongs to

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

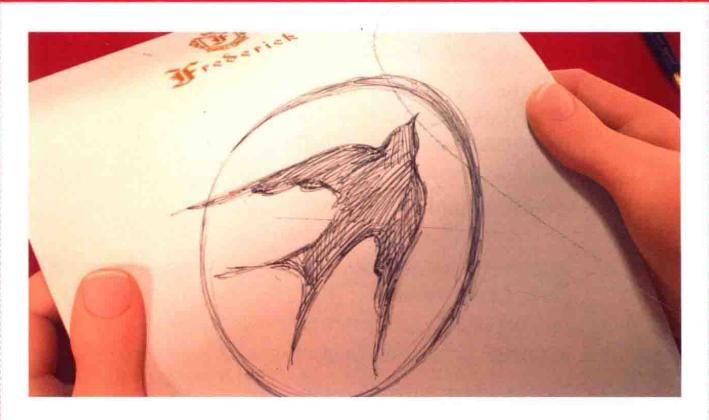
出国旅行办理护照和签证:

- 1 I want to apply for a passport. 我想申请护照。
- What do I need to apply for a passport? 我申请护照需要提交哪些材料?
- **3** How long does it take to get a passport? 多长时间可以拿到护照?
- 4 What's the validity period? 护照多长时间有效?
- 5 Your traveling passport is only good for six months. 你的旅游护照有效期为六个月。
- My passport expires in August of 2016. 我的护照有效期至2016年8月。
- 7 I'm going to get it extended before it expires. 在到期之前,我将申请延期。
- 8 My passport is stained and spoiled. 我的护照污损了。
- 9 My passport is missing. 我的护照不见了。

- 10 Can I get it reissued? 能补发一本吗?
- 11 I was granted a visa. 我获得了入境签证。
- My visa application has been rejected many times. 我的签证一再遭到拒签。
- 13 I want an extension on my visa. 我想延长签证。



Unit 28 Fred's Conjecture 弗雷德的猜想



小宏发现面具男身上带有小鸟符号,他们想通过这个符号推测出 面具男的真实身份。弗莱德猜测凶手是阿拉斯泰尔·格利,因为 之前小宏拒绝了格利购买微型机器人的请求, 所以他才不择手段 报复小宏。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 mean anything to . . .
- 2 something with this symbol on it
- 3 don't even know
- 4 none other than





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Does that symbol mean anything to you, guys?

小宏 你们认得这个符号吗,伙计们?

Fred Yes! It's a bird!

弗雷德 认得! 这是只鸟。

Hiro No, the guy in the mask was carrying something with

this symbol on it.

小宏不,那个面具男带着一个有这个符号的东西。

Baymax Apprehending the man in the mask will improve Hiro's

emotional state.

大白 抓住那个戴面具的男人可以改善小宏的情绪。

Go Go Apprehend him? We don't even know who he is!

神行御姐 抓住他? 我们都不知道他是谁!

Fred I have a theory.

弗雷德 我知道是谁。

Hiro Dr. Slaughter, MD?

小宏 恐怖屠夫医生?

Fred Actually, millionaire weapons designer, Malcolm

Chastletick.

弗雷德实际上,他是身价百万的武器设计师,马尔科姆·查瑟蒂克。

Hiro The Annihilator?

小宏 消灭者?

Fred Behind the mask? Industrialist, Reed Exworthy!

弗雷德 藏在面具后面的是企业家里德·埃克斯沃斯?

Go Go Baron Von De Struck? Oh, just get to the point!

神行御姐 冯·迪斯特拉克男爵?哦,直接说重点!

Fred Don't you guys get it? The man in the mask who attacked

us is none other than . . . Voila! Alastair Krei.

弗雷德 你们还不明白吗?那个攻击我们的面具男子肯定是,阿拉斯泰尔·格利。

millionaire 百万富翁 / annihilator 消灭者 / industrialist 企业家

Oral English 口语知识点



1 don't even know 甚至不知道

don't even know 后面常跟宾语从句,从句使用陈述语序。even 在这里表示强调。如:

- ▶ I don't even know who you are anymore. 我甚至都不知道你是谁了。
- ▶ You don't even know who your father is. 你甚至不知道你爸爸是谁。
- ▶ I don't even know where to start, 我甚至不知道该从哪里开始。
- ▶ She doesn't even know how beautiful she is. 她甚至不知道她有多美。

2 something with this symbol on it 有这个符号的东西

with this symbol on it 修饰 something。类似的句子有:

- ▶ We're looking for something with this symbol on it. 我们正在寻找有这个符号的东西。
- ▶ It is easy to find something with this symbol on it. 找到有这个符号的东西很容易。

with 复合结构作定语的例子还有:

- ▶ He saw a road with green grass and red flowers on both sides. 他看到一条路,两边长满了红花绿草。
- ▶ The teacher with a book in her hand enters the classroom. 老师手中拿着一本书,走进了教室。

3 none other than 不是别的而正是

none other than 表示"不是别的而正是"的意思。如:

- ▶ This mysterious woman is none other than the queen herself. 这位神秘的女士不是别人,正是女王本人。
- ▶ It was none other than Jenny who bought a house for you. 为你买房子的人不是别人,正是珍妮。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

mean anything to 对……没有意义(用于否定句或疑问句之中)

STEP

- 1. You don't mean anything to me. 你在我眼里什么也不是。
- Those guidelines don't mean anything to me. 那些指南对我没有意义。
- 3. Even if it doesn't mean anything to you, it could mean everything to them. 即使它对你没有意义, 但对他们来说就是一切。
- 4. Does that term _____ you? 那些条款对你有意义吗?
- 5. Do signed books ______ you? 签字的书对你有意义吗?

mean something/nothing/everything to 有一些意义/没有意义/就是一切

- 1. I want to mean something to you. 我想要对你有些意义。
- Pursue the things that mean something to you. 做一些对你有点意义的事情。
- 3. You mean everything to me. 你就是我的一切。
- 4. Your age _____ me. 你的年龄对我毫无意义。
- It's honestly true that money _____ me. 说实话, 金钱对我毫无意义。

- A: What you said means nothing to me. 你说的对我来说毫无意义。
- B: What? Why? 什么? 为什么啊?
- A: 'Cause I don't think what you said is right. 因为我觉得你说的不对。

KEYS

Step 1 4. mean anything to

5. mean anything to

Step 2 4. means nothing to

5. means nothing to

Exercises 情境练习

A	根据提示	外全对话中的空白。		
	Hiro	Does that symbol mean ① (任何东西) to you,		
		guys?		
	Fred	Yes! It's a bird!		
	Hiro	No, the guy in the mask was②(带着) something		
	with this symbol on it.			
	Baymax	Apprehending the man in the mask will ③ (改善)		
		Hiro's emotional state.		
	Go Go	④ (逮捕) him? We don't even know who he is!		
	Fred	I have a theory.		
	Hiro	Dr. Slaughter, MD?		
	Fred	Actually, millionaire weapons designer, Malcolm Chastletick.		
	Hiro	The Annihilator?		
	Fred	Behind the mask? Industrialist, Reed Exworthy!		
	Go Go	Baron Von De Struck? Oh, just ⑤ (说重点)!		
	Fred	Don't you guys get it? The man in the mask who attacked us		
		is		
В	根据汉语句	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。		
	①你对我来说没什么意义。			
	You do	n't me.		
		不再知道我是谁了。		
	I I am anymore.			
	③她甚至不知道她有多美。			
	She	beautiful she is.		
ŒΥ	'C A TO	anything ② carrying ③ improve ④ Apprehend ⑤ get to the point		
- 1	6 none other than			
		mean anything to ② don't even know who ③ doesn't even know how		

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

甜言蜜语,情话连篇:

- 1 You mean the world to me. 你是我的一切。
- 2 I love you with all my heart. 我真心实意地爱你。
- **3** I only have eyes for you. 在我眼里只有你一个人。
- 4 I can't help falling in love with you. 我无法不爱你。
- Do you know how much I love you? 你知道我有多爱你吗?
- 6 I love you for who you are. 我爱的就是你这个人。
- **7** I can't be without you. 没有你我无法活下去。
- 8 I've never loved anyone like this before. 我从未像这样爱过其他人。
- 9 We just hit it right off. 我们一见钟情。
- 10 We have so much in common! 我们有如此多的共同点!
- 11 I think we click. 我觉得我们很合得来。

Unit 29

The Superheroes Are Coming 超级英雄来了



聪明的小宏想出新办法来对付面具男,只要升级大白的传感器就可 以扫描整座城市找到他。但要抓住面具男绝非易事, 小宏还要升级 队友才行。超级英雄们要出现了,属于超级英雄的故事也即将拉开 序幕……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 I can use the data from your scan to find him.
- 2 Got it!
- 3 I like where . . .
- 4 But we're just us.
- 5 You can be way more.





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro I can use the data from your scan to find him!

小宏 我可以利用你的扫描数据来找他!

Go Go Uh, you'd have to scan everyone in San Fransokyo . . .

and that might take, I don't know, forever.

神行御姐 呃, 你要扫描旧金山的每一个人? 这也许得花上一辈子的时间。

Hiro No, no, no, no. I just have to look for another angle. Got

it! I'll scan the whole city at the same time. I just have to upgrade Baymax's sensor. Actually, if we're going to

catch this guy, I need to upgrade all of you.

小宏 不,不,不。只要换个角度看问题。有办法了!我可以同时扫描整座城市。只

要升级大白的传感器就行。事实上,想要抓住那家伙,我得把你们都升升级。

Wasabi Upgrade who now?

芥末无疆 把谁升升级?

Baymax Those who suffer a loss require support from friends and

loved ones.

大白 痛失所爱、需要朋友和爱人支持的人。

Fred Oh, I like where this is heading . . .

弗雷德 哦,我喜欢事情的走向。

Wasabi We can't go against that guy! We're nerds!

芥末无疆 我们打不赢那家伙的! 我们只是书呆子!

Honey Lemon Hiro, we want to help, but we're just . . . us.

哈妮柠檬 小宏,我们很想帮忙,但是却……爱莫能助。

Hiro No! You can be way more.

小宏 不! 你们潜力无穷。

Go Go Tadashi Hamada is our best friend. We're in.

神行御姐 泰迪·滨田是我们最好的朋友。我们加入。

Fred Can you feel it? You guys, do you feel these? Our origin

story begins. We are gonna be Superheroes!

弗雷德 你们能感受到吗?伙计们,你们感受到了吗?属于我们的故事正式开始了。我们要

成为超级英雄了!

sensor 传感器 / origin 开端

Oral English 口语知识点



I can use the data from your scan to find him. 我可以利用你的扫描数据来找他。

use sth. to do sth. 表示 "用某物做某事"。如:

▶ The teacher asked us to use pencils to write with when we were in Grade One. 上一年级的时候, 老师要求我们用铅笔写字。

其他结构类似但是意义大不相同的短语还有: used to do sth. (过去常常做某事); be used to do sth.(被用来做某事); be used to doing (习惯做某事)。如:

- ▶ I used to dance in the evening. 我过去常常在晚上跳舞。
- ▶ The knife is used to cut things. 刀是用来切东西的。
- ► My mother is used to getting up at six o'clock every morning. 我妈妈习惯早上六点起床。

2 Got it! 明白了!

Got it! 是常用的口语,表示"听懂了,听明白了"。如果没听明白,可以这样说:

- ▶ I am not clear about it. 我不明白。
- ▶ It's past my understanding. 我理解不了。
- ▶ It's beyond me. 我不懂。

3 But we're just us. 我们爱莫能助。

这句话的表面意思是"我们只是我们",根据语境可以理解为"我们爱 莫能助"。

4 You can be way more. 你们潜力无穷。

这句话的表面意思是"你们可以是更多",根据语境可以理解为"你们潜力无穷"。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I like where . . . 我喜欢

S	T	E	P
	í	ĺ	
	ľ		

- 1. I like where things are going. 我喜欢事情这样发展。
- 2. I like where we are going to visit. 我喜欢我们要去参观的地方。
- 3. I like where we live. 我喜欢我们住的地方。

4	Istudy	/. 我喜欢我读书的地方。
---	--------	---------------

5. ______ you take me to. 我喜欢你带我去的地方。

S+V+where . . .

- 1. Don't put the medicine where our son can reach. 不要把药放到儿子够得到的地方。
- 2. This is where I saw him for the first time. 这是我第一次见到他的地方。
- 3. You're free to go where you like. 你想到哪儿就可以到哪儿去。
- We went back to we started. 我们回到了我们出发的地方。
- 5. He knows _____ you can buy things like that. 他知道在哪里你可以买到那样的东西。

- A: I like where this is heading. But where can we buy flowers? 我喜欢事情这样进展。但是我们去哪里买花啊?
- B: Here is a business card. You can call the boss. 这是一张名片。你可以给老板打电话。
- A: OK. Thanks! 好的。谢谢!

KEYS

Step 1 4. I like where

Step 2

4. where

5. I like where

5. where

Exercises 情境练习

Α	根据提示	外全对话中的空白。
	Hiro	I can use the data from your ① (扫描) to find him!
	Go Go	Uh, you'd have to scan everyone in San Fransokyo and that
		might take, I don't know, forever.
	Hiro	No, no, no, no. I just have to look for②(另
		一个角度)
		city at the same time. I just have to upgrade Baymax's sensor.
		Actually, if we're going to catch this guy, I need to upgrade all
		of you.
	Wasabi	Upgrade who now?
	Baymax	Those who suffer a loss require ④ (支持)
		from friends and loved ones.
	Fred	Oh, I like where this is heading
	Wasabi	We can't ⑤ (抵抗) that guy! We're nerds!
	Honey Lemon	Hiro, we want to help, but we're just us.
	Hiro	No! You can be way more.
	Go Go	Tadashi Hamada is our best friend. We're in.
	Fred	Can you feel it? You guys, do you feel these? Our origin story
		begins. We are gonna be Superheroes!
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①她过去?	常常每天早上跑步。
	She	run every morning.
	②我明白	J.
	Ι	
	③那是我	第一次游泳的地方。
	That's _	I swam for the first time.
KE	YS A ① s	scan ② another angle ③ Got it ④ support ⑤ go against

B 1 used to 2 got it 3 where

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

请你帮帮我吧:

- 1 Could you do me a favor? 你能帮我个忙吗?
- Would you please do something for me? 你能帮我做件事吗?
- **3** You got to help me out here, Sally. 萨莉, 你得帮帮我。
- 4 I came here to ask you for a big favor. 我来是想请你帮个大忙。
- Hey, can you help me out here? 嗨, 你能来帮我个忙吗?
- 6 Could you shut the door? 你能把门关上吗?
- 7 Can you please turn this off? 你能把这东西关掉吗?
- 8 I wonder if I could ask you to turn that down a little. 我可不可以请你把那个声音关小一点?
- 9 Can you handle that for me? 你能帮我弄一下那个吗?
- 10 Could you give me a hand with these books? 你能帮我拿这些书吗?
- Will you take me home? 你愿意送我回家吗?
- 12 I was wondering if you could give me a ride. 我想知道您是否可以载我一程?
- Please, help me out, for old time's sake. 拜托, 帮帮我, 看在过去的情面上。



Unit 30 Baymax 2.0 大白2.0版本



小宏成功把大白升级到2.0版本。现在,大白不仅能打火箭拳,还长 有翅膀能飞行。这让弗雷德觉得非常酷。而被升级的大白却觉得非 常疑惑,他弄不明白为什么成为更好的健康顾问需要让自己装备成 这样……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 . . . must be . . .
- 2 Check this out.
- 3 I'd like to introduce . . .
- 4 Show 'em what . . .
- 5 That's just one of . . .





Screen English 情景再现

Hiro The neural transmitter must be in his mask. We get the

mask and he can't control the bots. Game Over.

小宏神经递质一定在他的面具里。我们拿到面具,他就不能控制那些机器人了。游戏结束。

Fred Super-jump! I breathe fire! Woo-hoo!

弗雷德 质的飞跃! 我嗅到战火味了! 哇哈!

Honey Lemon I love it!

哈妮柠檬 好喜欢。

Go Go Not bad.

神行御姐 不错。

Wasabi Anybody else's suit riding up on 'em?

芥末无疆 还有谁的衣服会缩上去吗?

Hiro Hey, guys. Check this out. I'd like to introduce . . . Baymax 2.0!

小宏 嘿,各位,来看看这个。我要向你们介绍……大白2.0!

Fred Ah! He's glorious.

弗雷德 啊! 他真是太赞了!

Baymax Hello. 大白 你们好。

Hiro Whoa, whoa. Hold up. Focus. Show 'em what you got,

buddy. The fist. Show them the fist. No, not that. The

thing . . . the other thing.

小宏 哇哦,哇哦,等等,拜托你认真点儿。让他们瞧瞧你的本事,伙计。拳头,让他们

看看你的拳头。不,不是这个。另……另外一个。

Fred Rocket fist! Make Freddie so happy.

弗雷德 火箭拳! 弗雷德好爱好开心。

Hiro That's just one of his new upgrades. Baymax, wings!

小宏 好戏还在后头呢。大白,翅膀!

Fred No way 弗雷德 不是吧······

Hiro Thrusters.

小宏 推进器。

Baymax I fail to see how flying makes me a better health-care companion.

大白 我不懂飞行如何能让我变成更好的健康顾问。

glorious 值得称道的 / thruster 推进器

Oral English 口语知识点



1 I'd like to introduce . . . 我想要介绍……

would like 意思是"想要",后面常跟 to do 不定式。introduce 意思是"介绍"。 I'd like to introduce . . . 常常在介绍自己或别人时使用。如:

- ▶ I'd like to introduce someone who has just come into my life. 我想要介绍刚刚进入我生活的人。
- ▶ I'd like to introduce myself. 我想做一下自我介绍。

2 Check this out. 来看看这个。

Check this out. 是口语中很常用的句子, 当你要告诉别人一件事或要对方看一个东西时, 就可以用这句话来引起他的注意。 check out 单独使用时可以表示"结账退房,下班",如:

▶ I'd like to check out. 我想结账退房。

而与此相对应的就是 check in,它的意思就是"办理登记手续,托运行李"等。此外, check out 还可以表示"检查,核查"的意思,如:

▶ Please check out everything before you get started. 在你开始前,请先检查一下所有东西。

3 Show 'em what . . . 展示给他们……

show 'em 是 show them 的缩写。show 'em 后面跟的是 what 引导的 名词性从句,用来引出想要展示给别人的东西或事情。如:

▶ Show 'em what you are working on now. 展示给他们看看你正在致力于做的事情。

4 That's just one of . . . 那只是……其中之一

one of . . . 意思是 "······之一", 后面跟可数名词复数。That's just one of . . . 言外之意是 "······还有其他本领或功能"。如:

- ▶ That's just one of his many talents. 那只是他的多种天赋之一。
- ▶ That's just one of his incredible achievements. 那只是他惊人的成就之一。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

... must be in ... -定(在)

STEP

- 1. The clue must be in his name. 线索一定在他名字里。
- 2. The old captain must be in his sixties. 这位老船长一定有六十多岁了。
- 3. She thought he must be in his room. 她想他肯定在他房间里。
- 4. He says singing ______ blood. 他说他天生爱唱歌。
- 5. Tom is not in the living room, so he _____ the bedroom. 汤姆不在起居室,所以他一定在卧室里。

2 2

- . . . must be . . . 一定是
- 1. You must be new here. 你一定是刚到这里。
- 2. She must be from another country. 她一定是来自另一个国家。
- 3. I must be out of my mind. 我一定是精神错乱了。
- 4. He ______ mad at me. 他一定对我气得发疯。
- 5. My ears are burning. They ______ talking about me. 我的耳朵在发热。他们一定是在谈论我。

STE

- A: Do you know where Lucy is? 你知道露西在哪儿吗?
- B: She must be in the study. She's got a lot of homework to do. 她肯定在书房里,她有很多家庭作业需要做。
- A: Looks like it's better not to disturb her right now. 看来现在最好不要打扰她。

KEYS Step 1 4. must be in his Step 2 4. must be

5. must be in

5. must be

Exercises 情境练习

Α	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。
	Hiro	The neural transmitter must be in his mask. We get the mask
		and he can't① (控制) the bots. Game Over.
	Fred	Super-jump! I breathe fire! Woo-hoo!
	Honey Lemon	I love it!
	Go Go	Not bad.
	Wasabi	Anybody else's suit riding up on 'em?
	Hiro	Hey, guys② (来看看这个). I'd like to③
		(介绍)Baymax 2.0!
	Fred	Ah! He's glorious.
	Baymax	Hello.
	Hiro	Whoa, whoa. Hold up. Focus. Show 'em what you got buddy. The fist.
		Show them the fist. No, not that. The thing the other thing.
	Fred	Rocket fist! Make Freddie so happy.
	Hiro	That's just one of his new upgrades. Baymax, wings!
	Fred	④(不是吧)
	Hiro	Thrusters.
	Baymax	I fail to see⑤ (如何) flying makes me a better
		health-care companion.
В	根据汉语句	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①他现在这	还在书房里, 你一定是弄错了。
	He is st	ill in the study, you

KEYS A ① control ② Check this out ③ introduce ④ No way ⑤ how B ① must be wrong ② Check this out ③ He can't control

his feelings.

②来看看这个,这是目前最流行的款式。

③他不能控制自己的情绪。

_! This is the latest fashion.

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

听听医生怎么说:

- I need to take your blood pressure. 让我量一下你的血压。
- Does this hurt? 这儿疼吗?
- **3** Let me take your temperature. 让我给你量一下体温。
- 4 How is your appetite? 你的胃口怎么样?
- Are you having regular bowel movements? 你大便正常吗?
- 6 Do you feel short of breath? 你觉得气短吗?
- **7** I think you've got the flu. 我看你是患了流感。
- 8 No signs of paralysis. 没有麻痹的迹象。
- Your blood pressure has gone down. 你的血压有所下降。
- The results will be ready in three days. 检验结果三天后知晓。
- Take this prescription to the pharmacy. 拿着这张处方,到药房取药。
- 12 You'd better stop smoking. 你最好戒烟。
- 13 I'm afraid we'll have to operate. 恐怕要给你动手术。
- The medicine may take a little time to work. 药效要过一会儿才能发挥出来。



On the Isolated Island

在隔离岛上



升级完后的大白扫描功能大大增强,他通过传感器扫描到戴面具的人出现在了一座岛上。当小宏他们搭乘着大白到达那座岛时,却发现那是一座被隔离的荒岛。超能陆战队降落在一个类似军事建筑物的附近,他们慢慢向着那扇巨大的钢铁门靠近……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 if you say . . .
- 2 want sb. to do sth.
- 3 sb. still have to find . . .
- 4 have found a match
- 5 Be ready, he could be anywhere.



扫一扫 项习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Baymax Your emotional state has improved. I can deactivate if

you say you are satisfied with your care.

大白你的情绪状态提升了。如果你说你满意我的护理,我就可以待机了。

Hiro What? No, I don't want you to deactivate. We still have to

find that guy. So fire up that super-sensor.

小宏 什么?不,我不想让你待机。我们还要找到那个人。所以,发动你的超级传感器吧。

Baymax Functionality improved. 1000% increase in range. I have

found a match on that island.

大白 功能提升。增加1000%射程。我已经在那座岛上找到了一个匹配对象。

Go Go Killer view!

神行御姐 风景太棒了!

Wasabi Yeah, if I wasn't terrified of heights, I'd probably love

this. But I'm terrified of heights, so I don't love it.

芥末无疆 是啊,如果我不恐高的话,我可能会喜欢的。但我恐高,所以不喜欢。

Hiro There. Baymax, take us in.

小宏 那里。大白,带我们进去。

Fred Awesome! Our first landing together as a team!

弗雷德 太赞了! 我们这个小队第一次一起着陆!

Hiro Guys, come on.

小宏 伙计们,别玩了。

Wasabi "Quarantine?" Do you people know what "quarantine"

means?

芥末无疆 "隔离"?你们知道"隔离"是什么意思吗?

Baymax Quarantine: Enforced isolation to prevent contamination

that could lead to disease or in some cases, death.

大白 隔离——强制隔绝污染物,以防其引起疾病,甚至导致死亡。

Wasabi Ooh! There's a skull face on this one. A skull face!

芥末无疆 哦,这标志上有个骷髅。有个骷髅啊!

Hiro Be ready, he could be anywhere.

小宏准备好,他随时可能出现。

deactivate 停用 / functionality 功能 / quarantine 隔离 / skull 头盖骨

Oral English 口语知识点



1 if you say . . . 如果你说……

if you say 后面通常跟宾语从句,然后再加一个主句,表示"如果你说……,那就怎么样"。如:

- ▶ I'm sure that if you say this with all your heart, the result will be good. 我确信如果你心里真这么想,结果将会不错。
- ▶ If you say you're going to do something, do it! 如果你说要做一件事情,那就去做吧!

2 want sb. to do sth. 想要某人做某事

want to do sth. (想要做某事)可以用来谈论理想或者想做的事情; want sb. to do sth. (想要某人做某事)用来表达对别人的期望、要求。如:

- ▶ She wants to be a teacher when she grows up. 她长大后想当一名老师。
- ▶ My brother wants to drink some milk. 我弟弟想喝些牛奶。
- ▶ I don't want you to save the world. 我不想让你去拯救世界。

3 have found a match 找到匹配对象

match 除了用作动词"匹配",还可以用作名词"匹配,匹配的人或物", find a match 意为"找到匹配对象"。如:

▶ Users can contact each other directly if they believe they have found a match. 如果找到匹配目标,用户可以直接相互联系。

4 Be ready, he could be anywhere. 准备好, 他可能随时会出现。

be ready 常常用于可能有什么情况出现时提醒别人注意。如:

▶ Be ready, he could be coming right now. 准备好, 他可能马上就来。

和 ready 有关的词组有 be ready for/to do sth. 与 get ready for/to do sth.。二者的区别在于前者表示"做好了……准备";后者表示"为……做准备",常用于进行时。如:

- ▶ I'm ready to move to a new city. 我做好了去一座新城市的准备。
- ▶ He is getting ready for the exam. 他正在准备考试。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

sb. still have to find 仍然得找

STEP

- 1. I still have to find my way. 我仍然得找到我自己的方法。
- 2. Even if you write a great novel, you still have to find someone willing to publish it. 你小说写得再好,也仍然得找到愿意出版的人。
- 3. Once you've decided where you want to go, you'll still have to find somewhere to live. 一旦决定你想去哪里, 你仍然得找住的地方。
- 4. You _____ some more evidence. 你仍然需要找到更多的证据。
- 5. Even if your product has been produced, you _____ ways to sell it. 即使你的产品生产出来,你仍然得想办法卖出去。

STEP 2

still have to + v. 仍然得做 ······

- 1. If I'm dead, do I still have to pay taxes? 如果我死了, 还是得交税吗?
- 2. Should men still have to pay for dates? 男士仍然应该为约会买单吗?
- 3. Do I still have to obey and submit to my parents when I turn eighteen? 我十八岁的时候还必须听从父母的指示吗?
- 4. If I give up my parental rights, do I ______ pay child support? 如果我放弃亲权,还必须支付子女的赡养费吗?
- 5. Why do we _____ work so many hours while there are so many people without jobs? 这么多人没有工作,为什么我们还得工作这么长时间?

STEP 3 A: If you are lucky enough to get a full scholarship, you'll still have to find money for your travel expenses, books and so forth. 如果你足够幸运得到全额奖学金,你还得支付旅行费、书费等。

B: I know. That worries me. 我知道。那让我很担心。

A: Maybe I can help you. 也许我能够帮助你。

KEYS Step 1 4. still have to find Step 2 4. still have to

5. still have to find

5. still have to

Exercises 情境练习

Α	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。
	Baymax	Your emotional ① (状态) has improved. I can deactivate
		if you say you are② (满意的) with your care.
	Hiro	What? No, I don't want you to deactivate. We still
		③ (不得不) find that guy. So fire up that super-sensor.
	Baymax	Functionality improved. 1000% increase in range. I have
		④(发现匹配对象) on that island.
	Go Go	Killer view!
	Wasabi	Yeah, if I wasn't terrified of heights, I'd probably love this.
		But I'm ⑤ (害怕) heights, so I don't love it.
	Hiro	There. Baymax, take us in.
	Fred	Awesome! Our first landing together as a team!
	Hiro	Guys, come on.
	Wasabi	"Quarantine"? Do you people know what quarantine ⑥ (意思)?
	Baymax	Quarantine: Enforced isolation to prevent contamination that
	Daymax	could②(导致) disease or in some cases, death.
	Wasabi	Ooh! There's a skull face on this one. A skull face!
В	根据汉语位	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①我仍然征	 导找一个方法去那里。
	I	a way to get there.
	②如果你打	找到了一个匹配对象,别忘记告诉我们。
	If you _	, don't forget to let us know.

KEYS A ① state ② satisfied ③ have to ④ found a match ⑤ terrified of ⑥ means ⑦ lead to
B ① still have to find ② have found a match ③ At least we

③至少我们有呼吸的空间。

have breathing space.

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

你的情绪为哪般?

- 1 I'm so excited that I'm speechless. 我太激动了都不知说什么好。
- 2 I couldn't be happier. 我觉得非常开心。
- 3 I'm on top of the world. 我欣喜若狂。
- 4 You've got stars in your eyes. 你看上去满面春风。
- 5 I feel like a million bucks. 我感觉好极了。
- 6 Nothing would please me more. 没有比这更让人开心的了。
- 7 I'm so relieved. 我总算松了口气。

- 8 Everything's working out. 一切都尽如人意。
- Things couldn't be better. 情况好得不能再好了。
- 10 What a disappointment! 真令人失望!
- 11 It wasn't as good as I thought it would be. 没有我原来想的那么好。
- 12 I'm in a slump right now. 我现在情绪很低落。
- 13 I feel blue. 我觉得很消沉。
- **14** Today just isn't my day. 今天我真是什么都不顺心。



How Come It's Him

怎么会是他



小宏他们在岛上找到了戴面具的人,经过一番战斗后,终于打败了 他。揭开面具的一刹那,却让他们都震惊了——面具后的人不是格 利,而是卡拉汉,那个让泰迪舍命去救的人。这一幕让小宏无法接 受.....



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 shut down
- 2 He's using your . . .
- 3 hand over
- 4 get a taste of
- 5 Is that all you got?



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro The government shut down Krei's experiment.

小宏 政府叫停了格利的实验。

Honey lemon And he's using your microbots to steal his machine back.

哈妮柠檬 而他正在用你的微型机器人偷回机器。

Baymax Oh no.

大白糟糕。

Hiro Baymax, get us out of here. Go for the transmitter!

Behind his mask! Baymax!

小宏 大白, 把我们弄出去。去抢发射器! 就在他面具后面! 大白!

Wasabi All right, what's the plan?

芥末无疆 好吧,计划是什么?

. .

Go Go Get the mask!

神行御姐 拿到面具。

Honey Lemon Right behind you.

哈妮柠檬 我在背后支持你。

Wasabi For real, what is the plan? Hey! You want to dance, masked

man? 'Cause you'll be dancing with this. Hand over the mask, or you will get a taste of this! And a little bit of that! Hey . . . I

did all right. Is that all you got? Oh, you got that, too?

芥末无疆 说真的,计划是什么?喂!想跳舞吗,面具男?因为你将戴着这个跳。交出面具,

否则就让你尝尝这个! 再来点那个! 嘿……我还挺厉害。你就这点本事?哦,你也

会那个?

Fred Back into the fire!

弗雷德 再次接受火的考验吧!

Hiro It's over, Krei! Professor Callaghan . . . the explosion . . . you died.

小宏 结束了,格利!卡拉汉教授……在那次爆炸中……你死了啊。

Callaghan No, I had your microbots.

卡拉汉 没有,我用了你的微型机器人。

Hiro But . . . Tadashi . . . you just let him die.

小宏 但是……泰迪……你就眼睁睁看着他死去了。

transmitter 发射器 / explosion 爆炸

Oral English 口语知识点



shut down 关闭; 停业

shut down 表示关掉机器或停业。与 shut 有关的另一个表达是 shut off。 shut off 也有关闭的意思, 但是一般指断电、关闭液体或气体的阀门。如:

- ▶ Please be aware that the service will be shut down on Monday. 请注意周一停止服务。
- ▶ Please shut off the electricity before you leave home. 离开家之前请切断电源。

2 hand over 交出; 移交

hand over 意思是"交出,移交",与 hand 有关的另一个表达是 hand in,意思是"上交,交上"。hand over 显得更正式。如:

- ▶ The company did not hand over information about its users to the government. 该公司没有把用户的信息交给政府。
- ▶ Hand in your homework before nine o'clock tomorrow morning. 明天早上九点之前交作业。

3 get a taste of 体验到; 感受到

taste 作名词时,本意是"味道",可延伸为"感受",所以 get a taste of 意思是"体验到;感受到"。如:

- ▶ This is the place where you can get a taste of the local life. 这是体验当地生活的地方。
- ▶ You can get a taste of how the dance looks. 你可以感受下这支舞怎么跳。

4 Is that all you got? 你就那点能耐吗?

Is that all you got? 本意是"那就是你所有的东西吗",语境不同,"东西"指代的内容就不同。

- (1) 涉及钱财, 意思是"你就只有这么点儿钱了吗?"
- (2) 涉及信息, 意思是"你就只找出了这么些线索?"
- (3) 涉及两人较劲, 意思是"你就只有这点本事(能耐)?"



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

He is using your . . . 他正在利用你的……



- 1. He's using your weakness. 他正在利用你的软弱。
- 2. He's using your insecurities to control you. 他正在利用你的心神不定控制你。
- 3. He's using your identity to commit these crimes. 他正在用你的身份犯罪。

4. ______ relationship as a weapon to get what he wants. 他把你和他的关系当作武器以获取他需要的东西。

5. ______ enthusiasm to serve his purposes. 他正在利用你的热情以达成他的目的。

2 2

He's using you . . . 他正在利用你……

- 1. He's using you to manipulate me. 他正在利用你来控制我。
- 2. He's using you for your money. 他正在利用你, 向你要钱。
- 3. He's using you to make me jealous. 他正在利用你来让我心生嫉妒。

4. ______ to help him commit a crime. 他正在利用你帮他犯罪。

5. ______ to get a job through your dad. 他正在利用你, 让你爸爸帮他找工作。

STEF

A: He is using you to get what he wants. 他在利用你得到他想要的东西。

B: No way. We are best friends. 不可能。我们是好朋友。

A: Oh, you stupid morons! 哦,你们都是傻瓜!

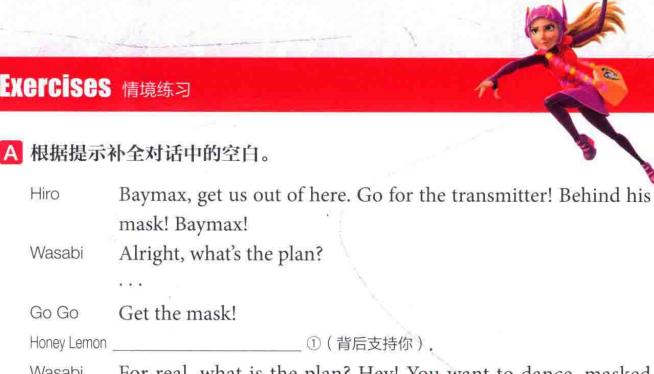
KEYS Step 1 4. He's using your Step 2 4. He's using you

5. He's using your

5. He's using you

Exercises 情境练习

Hiro



Wasabi	Alright, what's the plan?

Go Go	Get the mask!
Honey Lemon	①(背后支持你).
Wasabi	For real, what is the plan? Hey! You want to dance, masked
	man? 'Cause you'll be dancing with this ② (上交)
	the mask, or you will
	And a little bit of that! Hey, I did all right ④ (你就
	这点本事吗)! Oh, you got that too?
Fred	Back into the fire!
Hiro	It's ⑤ (结束), Krei! Professor Callaghan the
	explosion you died
Callaghan	No, I had your microbots.
Hiro	But Tadashi You just let him die.

B 根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。

①他正在利用你的善良。	
	kindness.
②这家店一个月前停业了	0
The store	a month ago.
③你明天为什么不和他们	一起去钓鱼?
	go fishing with them tomorrows

KEYS A ① Right behind you ② Hand over ③ get a taste 4 Is that all you got 5 over B ① He's using your ② shut down ③ Why not

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

千变万化提建议:

提建议的基本句型总结:

Why don't . . .?

Maybe we could . . .

You might as well . . .

I think you should . . .

You'd better . . .

Can't you tell him/her that . . .?

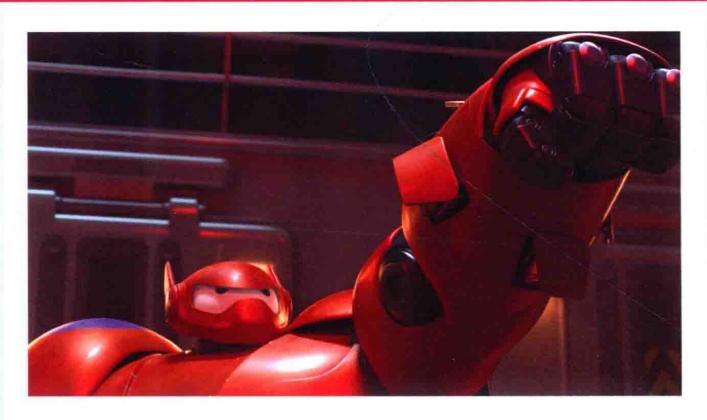
I suggest . . .

- 1 Why don't you join us? 为什么不加入我们呢?
- Why don't you come with me? 为什么不跟我一起来呢?
- 3 Maybe we could get together sometime and talk about it. 或许我们可以找个时间聚聚,聊聊这事儿。
- 4 You might as well finish the job tomorrow. 你不妨明天再把工作做完。
- 5 I suggest we go on a picnic this weekend. 我建议我们周末去野餐。
- 6 I think you should get some fresh air. 我想你应该去透透气。
- **7** You'd better stay away from him. 你最好离他远点。
- 8 Can't you tell her that you are not in the mood? 你不能告诉她你没有心情吗?



Baymax, Destroy Him

大白,摧毁他



发现事情的真相后, 小宏十分愤怒, 又为哥哥的牺牲感到不值。 为了给哥哥报仇,他命令大白杀死卡拉汉,但他这一决定遭到了 其队友的反对。大白的程序被破坏了,无法进行有效攻击,让卡 拉汉逃走了。



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 He went in there to . . .
- 2 prevent . . . from . . .
- 3 That's it!
- 4 I never should've let you . . .





Screen English 情景再现

Callaghan Give me the mask, Hiro.

卡拉汉 把面具给我, 小宏。

Hiro He went in there to save you!

小宏 他进入到那里是为了救你!

Callaghan That was his mistake!

卡拉汉 那是他的错!

Hiro Baymax, destroy!

小宏 大白,摧毁他!

Baymax My programming prevents me from injuring a human

being.

大白 我的程序阻止我伤害人类。

Hiro Not anymore.

小宏不再是了。

Go Go No! Stop, Baymax!

神行御姐 不! 住手, 大白!

Hiro No, stop! He's getting away!

小宏 不, 停下来! 他要逃走了!

Baymax My health-care protocol has been violated. I regret any

distress I may have caused.

大白 我的医疗保健程序被破坏了。很抱歉我带来了危险。

Hiro How could you do that? I had him!

小宏 你怎么能这样? 我本来都要抓住他了!

Wasabi What you just did—we never signed up for.

芥末无疆 你刚才所做的一切,我们都没同意过。

Go Go We said we catch the guy. That's it!

神行御姐 我们说好的抓住坏人,仅此而已!

Hiro I never should've let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan!

小宏 我从一开始就不该叫你们来帮我! 大白, 找到卡拉汉!

destroy 摧毁 / violate 侵犯 / regret 后悔 / sign up for 报名参加

Oral English 口语知识点



1 He went in there to . . . 他进入到那里是为了……

表达"到那里做什么事情"常用这句口语 go in there to do sth., to 在这里表示目的。如:

- ▶ He went in there to protect others. 他进入那里是为了保护其他人。
- ▶ He went in there to rescue us. 他进入那里是为了营救我们。

2 prevent ... from ... 阻止······做······

prevent . . . from 意思是"阻止……做……",同义词组是 stop . . . from . . . 和 keep . . . from . . . 。如:

- ▶ Pain prevents me from lifting heavy objects off the floor. 我身体疼痛,以至于我不能把重物从地板上拎起来。
- ▶ Fear stops me from going on trips. 恐惧使得我不能外出旅行。

3 That's it! 仅此而已!

That's it! 有以下几种用法:

- (1)表示赞同,意思是"对"。如:
- ► A: She is very clever. 她很聪明。 ► B: That's it! 对!
- (2) 表示发现问题所在, 意思是"问题就在这里"。
- ► A: I want to buy a big house, but I don't have enough money. 我想买一座大房子,但是钱不够。
- ▶ B: That's it. 问题就在这里。
- (3) 表示结束, 意思是"就这样, 仅此而已"。
- ▶ You can have an apple and that's it. 你可以吃个苹果, 仅此而已。
- (4) 表示厌烦或失望的情绪, 意思是"够了,算了"。
- ▶ That's it. Can you stop talking about it again and again? 够了。说了一遍又一遍了,能不能别说了?
- (5) 表示鼓励, 意思是"这样就对了"。
- ► That's it. Share good things with your little sister. 这样就对了。好东西跟妹妹分享。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I never should've let you . . . 我从一开始就不应该让你……



- 1. I never should've let you talk me into this. 我从一开始就不应该让你说服我做这事的。
- I never should've let you drive my car. 我从一开始就不应该让你开我的车的。
- I never should've let you see that movie. 我从一开始就不应该让你看那部电影的。

4. ______ get away. 我从一开始就不应该放你走的。

paint my wall pink. 我从一开始就不应该让你把我的墙刷成粉色的。

never should've done 本来不应该做 ······

- 1. I never should've come here. 我本不应该来这里的。
- 2. I never should've told you how I felt about you. 我本不应该告诉你我对你的感觉的。
- 3. I never should've left you here all alone. 我本不应该把你一个人留在这里的。

4. _____ kissed you. 我本不应该吻你的。

loved you. 我本不应该爱你的。

A: I never should've let her know that. 我本不应该让她知道那事的。

B: Don't be silly. Maybe it's all for the best. 别傻了。也许这样最好呢。

A: Really? I hope so. 直的吗? 希望如此。

KEYS

Step 2 4. I never should've

Step 1 4. I never should've let you 5. I never should've let you

5. I never should've

Exercises 情境练习

KEYS



A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。

①(他进入那里是为了)save you②(他的错)! If you have prevents me from injuring a human being③(不再是这样了). ax!④(逃走)! protocol has been violated. I regret any distrected. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. In the guy⑤(仅此而已)! the let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 《不到好工作。 ddgetting a good job. 《庭作业的。
ng prevents me from injuring a human being③(不再是这样了). ax!④(逃走)! protocol has been violated. I regret any distreed. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. In the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 《不到好工作。 dgetting a good job.
ng prevents me from injuring a human being③(不再是这样了). ax!④(逃走)! protocol has been violated. I regret any distrected. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. In the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 《不到好工作。 dgetting a good job.
③(不再是这样了). ax!④(逃走)! protocol has been violated. I regret any distre ed. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. in the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 《不到好工作。 d
ax!
@(逃走)! protocol has been violated. I regret any distrected. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. the guy
@(逃走)! protocol has been violated. I regret any distrected. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. the guy
protocol has been violated. I regret any distreted. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. in the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
ed. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. in the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
ed. do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. in the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
do that? I had him! id—we never signed up for. in the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! 【句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
id—we never signed up for. the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! (句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
n the guy⑤(仅此而已)! e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! (句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 dgetting a good job.
e let you help me! Baymax, find Callaghan! (句子补充完整。 不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
一一一 getting a good job.
不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
不到好工作。 d getting a good job.
d getting a good job.
. 廷作业的 。
copy my homework.
抱歉。
oblems I have caused.
托

A ① He went in there to ② his mistake ③ Not anymore

B 1) prevents me from 2 I never should've let you 3 regret any

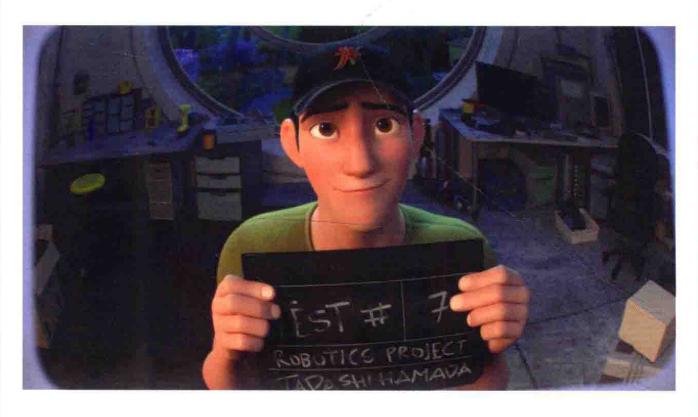
4 getting away 5 That's it

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

同意不同意大声讲出来:

- 1 I guess you're right. 我想你是对的。
- 2 I'm with you there. 在这一点上我同意你的看法。
- **3** I think so, too. 我也是这么想的。
- Yeah, that makes sense. 是的,有道理。
- 5 I totally agree. 我完全同意。
- 6 That's a pretty good idea. 这真是个好主意。
- **7** You've got a point. 你说得有道理。
- 8 You did the right thing, man. 你做得对,伙计!
- 9 I can't see your point of view. 我不同意你的观点。
- 10 I don't think that's rational. 我认为这是不明智的。
- 11 I don't think so. 我不那么想。
- 12 I'm afraid I don't agree. 恐怕我不能同意你。
- 13 It's not that way at all. 根本不是你说的那样。
- 14 I object! 我反对。

Unit 34 Hiro's Impulsion 小宏的冲动



回到车库后,小宏坐在电脑前,打算对大白的编码做出更改。想到 泰迪的死,小宏的情绪已经完全失控了。他打算设定程序让大白杀 死卡拉汉,为哥哥报仇。当大白问起"杀死卡拉汉能让你情绪稳定 吗?"时,小宏却支支吾吾摇摆不定了……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 Your blood pressure is elevated.
- 2 appear to
- 3 Are you going to . . .
- 4 My purpose is to . . .
- 5 It doesn't matter!



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Baymax Your blood pressure is elevated. You appear to be distressed.

大白你的血压升高了。你看起来很痛苦。

Hiro I'm fine. There, is it working?

小宏 我没事。好了,现在能用了吗?

Baymax My sensor is operational.

大白 我的传感器可以使用了。

Hiro Good. Let's get . . . What?

小宏 好的。我们……怎么回事?

Baymax Are you going to remove my health-care chip?

大白 你是不是要移除我的医疗保健芯片?

Hiro Yes. Open . . .

小宏 是的。打开……

Baymax My purpose is to heal the sick and the injured.

大白 我的功能是为病号和伤员疗伤。

Hiro Baymax, open your access port.

小宏 大白, 打开你的访问端口。

Baymax Do you want me to terminate Professor Callaghan?

大白 你是想让我去杀死卡拉汉教授吗?

Hiro Just open! 小宏 打开就是了!

Baymax Will terminating Professor Callaghan improve your

emotional state?

大白 杀死卡拉汉教授就能改善你的情绪吗?

Hiro Yes! No . . . I don't know. Open your access . . .

小宏 是的! 不是……我不知道。 打开你的端口……

Baymax Is this what Tadashi wanted?

大白 泰迪也想这样做吗?

Hiro It doesn't matter!

小宏 这都不重要!

distressed 痛苦的 / operational 可操作的 / remove 移动 / heal 治愈 / access port 访问 端口 / terminate 使终止

Oral English 口语知识点



1 Your blood pressure is elevated. 你的血压升高了

elevated 意思是"提高的"。常用的词组和句子有:

- ▶ elevated walkway 高架步行通道
- ▶ elevated freeways 高架高速公路
- ► The risk of having a heart attack is elevated for him. 他患心脏病的风险加大。

2 appear to 看起来像,貌似

appear 意思是"看起来", seem 也表示"看起来"。二者相同点是都可以跟 to 搭配;区别在于(1)后者更有确定性;(2) seem 后面可以跟 like,而 appear 不能。如:

- ▶ You appear to be worried about something. 你好像在担心什么事情。
- ▶ You appeared to be having a wonderful time. 你好像过得很开心。
- ▶ You seem to be really happy. 你好像真的很高兴。
- ▶ It seems like it's going to snow. 看起来好像要下雪了。

3 My purpose is to . . . 我的目的是……

这是口语中常用的一句话,用来表明自己的目的。如:

- ▶ My purpose is to give as I receive. 我的目的是将我的所得回报出去。
- ▶ My purpose is to live my most authentic life and to support others in doing the same. 我的目的是过最真实的生活,并支持他人这样做。

4 It doesn't matter!

这是外国人口语中常用的一句话,表示"没关系"。它还可以引导句子,如:

- ▶ It doesn't matter what the price is. 价钱多少没关系。
- ▶ It doesn't matter whether we start today or tomorrow. 今天或者明天开始都没关系。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

Are you going to . . . 你将要……吗?

- Are you going to take into account some of our proposals? 你要考虑下我们的一些建议吗?
- 2. Are you going to destroy the whole world? 你要摧毁整个世界吗?
- Are you going to remain in your traditional areas, or are you looking for challenges? 你要继续留在传统领域还是寻求挑战?

4	try harder at making your next
marriage a success? 你要更	们努力让下一次婚姻成功吗?
5	vote tomorrow? 明天你要去投票吗?

What are you going to do . . .? ……你将要做什么?

- 1. What are you going to do when you grow up? 长大后你要做什么?
- 2. What are you going to do with your life? 你打算怎么生活?
- 3. So, what are you going to do this weekend? 那么,这周末你要做什么?
- 4. _____ after school? 放学后你要做什么?
- ___ with your PhD? 你打算怎么获得哲学博士学位?

- A: What are you going to do on your birthday? 生日当天你想做什么?
- B: Nothing, just sleep all day. 没什么可做的, 睡一天觉吧。
- A: Why? Why don't we hold a birthday party? 为什么? 我们为什么不举办一个生日派对呢?

KEYS

Step 2

Step 1 4. Are you going to

4. What are you going to do

Are you going to

5. What are you going to do

Exercises 情境练习

③打开你的访问端口。

Open your _____

A	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。
	Baymax	Your ① (血压) is elevated. You
		appear to be distressed.
	Hiro	I'm fine. There,②(能用了吗)?
	Baymax	My sensor is
	Hiro	Good. Let's get What?
	Baymax	Are you going to remove my health-care chip?
	Hiro	Yes. Open
	Baymax	④ (我的目的是) heal the sick and the injured
	Hiro	Baymax, open your access port.
	Baymax	Do you want me to terminate Professor Callaghan?
	Hiro	Just open!
	Baymax	Will terminating Professor Callaghan improve your emotiona
		state?
	Hiro	Yes! No I don't know! Open your access
	Baymax	Is this what Tadashi wanted?
	Hiro	⑤(这都不重要)!
B)	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①你好像	完全没意识到现实。
	:	completely unware of the reality.
	②环境监	督机构具有可操作性。
	The en	vironment monitoring agency

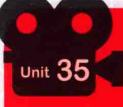
KEYS A ① blood pressure ② is it working ③ operational ④ My purpose is to ⑤ It doesn't matter

B ① You appear to be ② is operational ③ access port

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

电脑出了问题常用口语:

- 1 I can't log in. 我无法登录。
- 2 I can't get access to the menu. 我无法进入菜单。
- 3 It crashed. 电脑死机了。
- The screen is frozen. 电脑屏幕不动了。
- The screen is blank. 电脑屏幕变成空白了。
- 6 My disc is fried. 我的磁盘烧坏了。
- **7** The discs were formatted. 磁盘被格式化了。
- The document isn't printing right. 文件不能正常打印。



The Truth Comes Out

真相浮现



面对两难的选择,再加上对泰迪的思念,小宏满含泪水。同时小宏 也感觉到对不起大白,他向大白道歉,承认自己没有泰迪那么好脾 气。他也感到愧对朋友,让朋友冒这么大危险来对付蒙面人。但朋 友就是患难与共的,不是吗?



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 pick us up
- 2 He was such a good man.
- 3 What happened?
- 4 Hang on.



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro I'm so sorry. I guess I'm not like my brother.

小宏 真的对不起。我想我和我哥哥不一样。

Go Go Hiro. 神行御姐 小宏。

Hiro Guys, I... 小宏 朋友们, 我……

Go Go We are going to catch Callaghan. And this time, we'll do it right.

神行御姐 我们会去抓住卡拉汉。这一次,我们要干得漂亮。

Wasabi Hey! But maybe don't leave your team stranded on a

spooky island next time.

芥末无疆 嘿! 求你下次别把大伙留在一个令人毛骨悚然的岛上了。

Hiro Oh, man! 小宏 哦, 天啊!

Fred Nah, it's cool! Heathcliff picked us up in a family chopper.

弗雷德 算了,没事啦! 希斯克利夫开我们家的直升机去把我们接回来了。

Honey Lemon Hiro, we found something you should see.

哈妮柠檬 小宏,我们找到了些东西,你该看看。

Hiro Callaghan? He was there?

小宏 卡拉汉? 他在那儿?

Honey Lemon He was such a good man. What happened?

哈妮柠檬 他以前是个好人。发生了什么?

Hiro I don't know, but the answer's here somewhere.

小宏不知道,但是答案一定在这里。

Honey Lemon Wait, wait! Stop. There he is!

哈妮柠檬 等一下,等一下! 停。他在那儿!

Hiro With the pilot? Hang on. The pilot was Callaghan's

daughter! Callaghan blames Krei!

小宏 和那个飞行员在一起?等一下。那个飞行员是卡拉汉的女儿!卡拉汉怪罪于格利!

Fred This is a revenge story!

弗雷德 这都是为了复仇!

spooky 令人毛骨悚然的 / chopper 直升机 / blame 责怪 / revenge 复仇

Oral English 口语知识点



1 pick up 接(某人)

pick up 除了表示"接(某人)",还有"拾起""学会"的意思。如:

- ► My son will pick me up when I arrive in Shanghai. 我到上海的时候我儿子会开车来接我。
- ▶ Children like to pick up leaves. 孩子们喜欢捡树叶。
- ▶ Where did you pick up Chinese? 你在哪儿学会的汉语?

What happened? 怎么了?

happen 表示"发生"。What happened?在口语中出现频率很高,看到别人心情不好,可以用它询问对方怎么了、发生了什么事;看到交通堵塞也可以用它。询问发生什么事情还可以用如下表达:

- ▶ What's happening? 发生什么事情了?
- ▶ What happened to him? 他怎么了?

3 Hang on. 等一下。

Hang on. 本来是电话用语,表示让对方不要挂断,稍等一会儿,如: Hang on! I'll get Lily for you. (请不要挂断电话,我去找莉莉来接电话。)用得多了,hang on 也被用于日常生活,表示稍等一会儿,相当于 Hold on. 或 Wait a moment. 此外,hang on 还有"坚持下去;取决于,认真听"的意思。如:

- ▶ I believe that if I hang on, I will succeed in the end. 我相信如果我继续努力,最终我会成功的。
- ▶ All hangs on your own decision. 一切都取决于你的决定。
- ▶ Hang on! You will make it. 坚持住! 你会成功的。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

such+a/an+adj.+n. 如此······的······

STEF

- 1. She is such a beautiful girl. 这女孩真漂亮。
- 2. That's such a difficult problem. 那个问题真棘手。
- 3. He's thinking about such an important problem. 他正在考虑一个如此重要的问题。
- 4. He is eating _____ apple. 他正在吃一个那么大的苹果。
- 5. He answered _____ question. 他回答了那么难的问题。

2

so+adj.(+a/an)+n.

- 1. It is so clever a dog. 这条狗如此聪明。
- 2. There are so many beautiful flowers. 有这么多美丽的花。
- 3. There is so little water in this village. 这个村庄的水如此少。
- 4. There are ______ problems in my work. 我工作中遇到这么多困难。
- 5. There is ______ noise in this restaurant. 这个餐厅太嘈杂了。

STEP

- A: He has such good manners. 他真有礼貌。
- B: Yes, he is really a good boy. 是的, 他真是个好孩子。
- A: Yeah, we should learn from him. 是的,我们应该向他学习。

KEYS

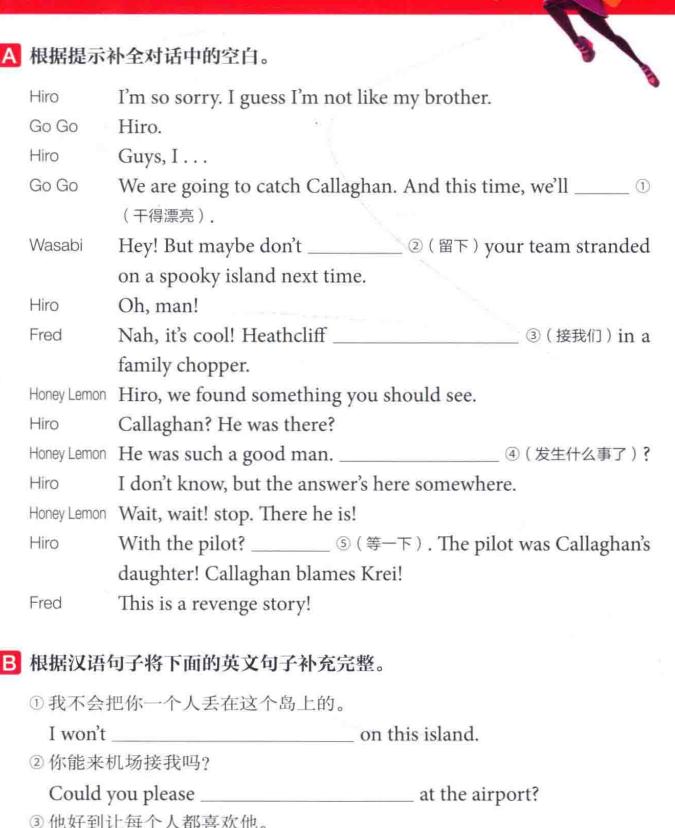
Step 1 4. such a big

Step 2 4, so many

5. such a difficult

5. so much

Exercises 情境练习



KEYS A ① do it right ② leave ③ picked us up ④ What happened ⑤ Hang on B ① leave you alone ② pick me up ③ such a good

He is _____ man that everyone likes him.

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

坦白真相, 承认错误:

1 He decided to make a clean breast of things and admit that he had broken the window.

他决定坦白交代,承认自己打碎了玻璃。 (make a clean breast of 和盘托出;完全承认)

Phe's finally come clean about his role in the robbery. 他终于坦白自己跟这起抢劫案有关。
(come clean 全盘招供; 坦白交代)

3 I stand corrected. The homework should be handed in on Wednesday, not Tuesday.

是我弄错了。应该是周三交作业,而不是周二。 (stand corrected 认错)

- 4 Do you want to own up and hope she forgives you? 你想坦白争取让她原谅你吗? (own up (to sth./to doing sth.) 坦白; 爽快承认)
- They had to eat crow when everything went against their prediction. 由于所有事情都和他们预测的不一样,所以他们不得不为此认错道歉。
 (美语: eat crow 丢脸;被迫收回自己的话)



Callaghan Wants Revenge

教授试图复仇



格利正在户外向其员工激情四射地发表着自己的演说,出人意料的是面具男出现了。不错,面具男正是卡拉汉。他是来为女儿复仇的。格利还在狡辩说卡拉汉女儿死于意外,他的话语彻底惹怒了卡拉汉。现在,卡拉汉要夺走格利的一切……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 be the culmination of
- None of this would have been possible without . . .
- 3 set sb. on the path to
- 4 you know



扫一扫 预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

This beautiful new campus is the culmination of a lifelong dream. But none of this would have been possible without a few bumps in the road. Those setbacks made us stronger

and set us on the path to a bright future.

格利 这个美丽的新园区是人生梦想的高潮,但这一切都不会来得一帆风顺。那些挫

折,使我们变得更强,并且让我们向着光明的未来又前进了一步。

Callaghan What? Setback? Was my daughter a setback?!

卡拉汉 什么?挫折?我女儿只是个挫折吗?!

Krei Callaghan! But you . . . your daughter . . . that . . . was an

accident.

格利 卡拉汉,但是你……你的女儿……那……是意外。

Callaghan No! You knew it was unsafe. My daughter is gone

because of your arrogance.

卡拉汉 不! 你明知道那个设备不安全。我女儿就是死于你的自大。

Krei What are you doing?

格利 你在干什么?

Callaghan You took everything from me when you sent Abigail into

that machine. Now I'm taking everything from you.

卡拉汉 你把艾比盖尔送进那个机器的时候,就夺走了我的一切。现在我要把你的一切

都夺走。

Krei No! No, no! You can't!

格利 不! 不, 不! 你不能这样做!

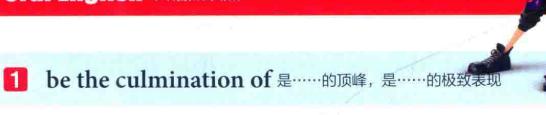
Callaghan You are going to watch everything you've built disappear.

Then it's your turn.

卡拉汉 你将会眼睁睁地看着你所创造的一切消失。然后就该轮到你了。

setback 挫折 / arrogance 自大 / disappear 消失

Oral English 口语知识点



be the culmination of 用来描述一件事情的高潮部分。如:

▶ This program is the culmination of many years' work. 这个程序是多年工作的极致表现。

culminate 是 culmination 的动词,词组 culminate in 表示"达到顶点,以……告终"。如:

► The party culminated in happy music. 聚会以欢乐的曲子而告终。

2 set sb. on the path to 使某人走上……道路

set 表示"使……处于某种状况", path 表示"道路", set sb. on the path to 意思是"使某人走上……道路"。如:

▶ Your expertise and dedication has set us on the path to success. 你的专业知识和无私奉献使我们走上了成功之路。

embark on the road of 也是"走上……道路"的意思。如:

▶ The company embarks on a road of Chinese buyers to brand development. 这家公司走出了一条适合中国品牌自身发展的买手之路。

3 you know 你知道的

you know 意思是"你知道的", 网络热词"你懂的"也可以这样表达。 I know 表示"我知道"。如:

- ▶ You knew it was wrong but you did it anyway. 你明知道这样做不对,但你还是这样做了。
- ▶ You knew it was too late. 你明知道已经太晚了。
- ▶ I knew it was going to happen. 我就知道会出这事。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

None of this would have been possible without 没有……这一切都不可能

STEP 1 None of this would have been possible without those who I
met during my moments of hardship.

要不是在艰难岁月遇到了那些人,这一切都不可能发生。

- 2. None of this would have been possible without the children who took part in it. 没有前来参与的孩子们,这一切都不可能。
- 3. None of this would have been possible without my son, Tom. 没有我的儿子汤姆,这一切都不可能。
- 4. _____ the love and support of family and friends. 没有家人和朋友的爱和支持,这一切都不可能。

STEP 2

wouldn't have been possible without . . . 没有……, ……不可能

 The position I am in now wouldn't have been possible without your love, concern and efforts.

没有你的爱、关心和努力,我现在不可能坐在这个位置上。

- 2. Our journey wouldn't have been possible without their generosity. 没有他们的慷慨大方,我们不可能去旅行的。
- Our success wouldn't have been possible without our greatest competitive advantages.

没有我们强大的竞争优势,我们是不可能成功的。

4. This ______ your support and collaboration. 没有你的支持与协作,这是不可能完成的。

STEP

- A: None of this would have been possible without you. Thank you. 没有你, 这是不可能的。谢谢。
- B: It's not a big deal! Ask me whenever you need help. 没事! 需要帮助随时找我。

KEYS Step 1 4. None of this would have been possible without

Step 2 4. wouldn't have been possible without

Exercises 情境练习

KEYS

A]	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。
	Krei	This beautiful new campus is the ① (顶峰) of
		a lifelong dream. But none of this would have been possible
		without a few bumps in the road. Those setbacks made us
		stronger and②(使某人走上······道路) to a bright
		future.
	Callaghan	What? Setback? Was my daughter a setback?!
	Krei	Callaghan! But you your daughter that was an accident.
	Callaghan	No! You knew it was unsafe. My daughter is ③ (死去)
		because of your arrogance.
	Krei	What are you doing?
	Callaghan	You ④ (夺走了我的一切) when you sent Abigail
		into that machine. Now I'm taking everything from you.
	Krei	No! No, no! You can't!
	Callaghan	You are going to watch everything you've built disappear. Then
		it's your ⑤ (轮到的机会).
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①你明知过	道这很危险。
		dangerous.
	② 我早就	知道这是个玩笑。
		a joke.
	③ 睁开眼	
	Open y	our eyes I have done for you.
	1 /	

215

B ① You knew it was ② I knew it was ③ You're going to watch everything

A ① culmination ② set us on the path ③ gone ④ took everything from me ⑤ turn

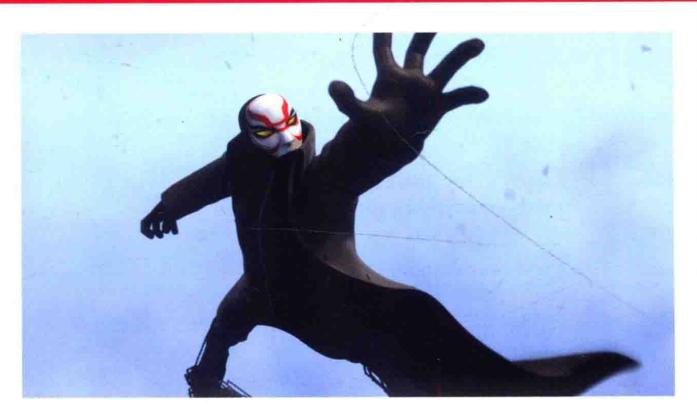
Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

葬礼上的常用口语:

- 1 He passed away. 他去世了。
- 2 I'm sorry to hear that. 听到这事我很难过。
- **3** It happens to everyone. 这种事是难免的。
- 4 You have my sympathy. 我很同情你。
- **5** Try not to be too down about it. 别太消沉了。
- Take things as they come. 既来之,则安之。
- Please give your family my condolences. 请转达我对你家人的慰问。
- 8 We are filled with grief. 我们悲痛至极。
- 9 What a pity we've lost such a great man! 我们为失去这么好的人而感到遗憾。
- If I can do anything at all, please let me know. 如果需要我做什么,请告诉我。
- I have a good probate lawyer. 我认识一个很好的遗嘱查验律师。
- 12 He left explicit instructions that he wished to be cremated. 他留下明确的遗言说想被火化。
- She wanted her ashes to be thrown into the river. 她希望把骨灰撒到河里去。



unit 37 Help Us 救救我们



小宏劝阻卡拉汉报复格利,卡拉汉执意不听劝告。小宏不得已命令 大白对付卡拉汉。然而卡拉汉操控的微型机器人无比强大, 弗雷德 他们都被困住了,只能向小宏求救。情急之下,小宏鼓励大家换个 角度思考如何来对付小机器人……



Key Points 学习重点

- 11 give sb. sth.
- 2 Leaping into action!
- 3 I know how to . . .
- 4 Look for a new angle!



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Professor Callaghan! Let him go! Is this what Abigail

would have wanted?

小宏 卡拉汉教授! 放开他! 这难道是艾比盖尔想要的吗?

Callaghan Abigail is gone! 卡拉汉 艾比盖尔已经不在了!

Hiro This won't change anything. Trust me, I know.

小宏 这改变不了什么的。相信我,我了解的。

Krei Listen to the kid, Callaghan. Please just . . . let me go. I'll

give you anything you want!

格利 那孩子说得对,卡拉汉。求你……放了我。你要什么我都给你。

Callaghan I want my daughter back!

卡拉汉 我要我女儿回来!

Hiro Go for the mask! Ahhhhhh . . .!

小宏 去抢面具! 啊——!

Team Baymax!

大伙儿 大白!

Fred Leaping into action!

弗雷德 马上行动!

Wasabi Getting a little tight . . .

芥末无疆 空间有点挤啊……

Gang Hiro! He's too strong! No way out! Hiro! Help! Hiro!

Help. Too strong! Hiro!

一起 小宏! 他太强了! 出不去! 小宏! 救命! 小宏! 救命。太强大了! 小宏!

Hiro That's it! I know how to beat him. Listen up! Use those big

brains of yours, and think your way around the problem.

Look for a new angle!

小宏 就这样!我知道怎么对付他了。大家听好了! 开动你们无敌的大脑, 用自己的方式

解决困境。换个角度思考!

Oral English 口语知识点



1 give sb. sth. 给某人某物

给某人某物有两种表达,一种是 give sb. sth.,另一种是 give sth. to sb.。如:

- ▶ I'll give you anything you desire. = I'll give anything you desire to you. 我会给你任何你想要的东西。
- ▶ I'll give you anything you ask for. = I'll give anything you ask for to you.
 你要求的任何东西我都给你。

2 Leaping into action! 马上采取行动!

leap 意思是"跳",在这里引申为"马上,立即"。词组的意思根据语境可以灵活理解。如:

- ▶ When we get an infection, the phagocytes will leap into action. 我们受到感染后,吞噬细胞会立刻活跃起来。
- ▶ We are ready to leap into action. 我们准备好立刻行动了。

3 Look for a new angle! 寻找新角度!

look for 意思是"寻找", angle 意思是"角度"。look for a new . . . 表示"寻找新的……"。如:

- ▶ It's time to look for a new job. 该找新工作了。
- ▶ I have recently decided to look for a new challenge. 最近我决定寻找新的挑战。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

I know how to . . . 我知道怎么……

STEP

- 1. I know how to solve my own problems. 我知道怎么处理自己的问题。
- 2. I know how to work with people in all walks of life. 我知道怎么和各种社会阶层的人共事。
- 3. I know how to check the oil in a car. 我知道怎么查看车里的油。
- 4. _____ cook eggs in at least three different ways. 我知道至少三种鸡蛋的烹饪方法。
- 5. _____ set up a wireless network. 我知道怎么设置无线网。

2 2

I know what to + v. 我知道做……

- 1. I'm not sure I know what to say about that. 我不确定我知道该说什么好。
- 2. I know what to write now. 现在我知道该写什么了。
- 3. I know what to eat and what not to eat. 我知道什么该吃什么不该吃。
- 4. ______ tell my doctors, and what to ask. 我知道该告诉医生什么,询问医生什么。
- 5. _____ expect from them. 我知道对他们该有什么期望。

STEP

- A: I know how to get what I want. 我知道怎么得到我想要的东西。
- B: Good. Go for it. 好。那就去吧。
- A: But I don't know what I want. 但是我不知道我想要什么。

KEYS

Step 1

4. I know how to

Step 2

4. I know what to

5. I know how to

5. I know what to

Exercises 情境练习

Α	根据提示	补全对话中的空白。	
	Hiro	Professor Callaghan! Let him go! Is this what Abigail would	
		have wanted?	
	Callaghan	Abigail is gone!	
	Hiro	This won't ① (改变任何事). Trust me. I know.	
	Krei	Listen to the kid, Callaghan. Please just let me go. I'll give	
		you② (任何你想要的)!	
	Callaghan	I want my daughter back!	
	Hiro	Go for the mask! Ahhhhhh!	
	Team	Baymax!	
	Fred	③(马上行动)!	
	Wasabi	Getting a little tight	
	Gang	Hiro! He's too strong!	
		Help! Hiro! Help. Too strong! Hiro!	
	Hiro	That's it! I know how to beat him. Listen up! Use those big	
		brains of yours, and think your way around the problem!	
		⑤(寻找新角度)!	
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。	
	① 这不会i	改变你的生活,但是也许有点儿帮助。	
		your life, but it might help.	
		怎么做一个好女孩。	
		how to be a good girl.	
③这是他本来会说的吗?			
	Is this?		
KEY	S A ①	change anything ② anything you want ③ Leaping into action ④ No way out	

B 1 This won't change 2 I know 3 what he would have said

(5) Look for a new angle

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

如何表达对家人的爱:

- 1 love my family very much! 我很爱我的家人!
- 2 I'm very lucky to have a happy family. 我非常幸运我有一个幸福的家庭。
- **3** We are all family. 我们都是一家人。
- 4 I love my little boy and I am capable of taking care of him. 我爱我的儿子而且我有能力照顾他。
- **5** A father's love is something to cherish and respect. 父爱是值得珍惜和尊敬的。
- 6 I love you too much to see you get hurt. 我那么爱你,不想让你受到伤害。
- **7** She must be missing her daddy pretty good by now. 现在她肯定非常思念她的父亲。



Superheroes Fight Back

超级英雄反击



小宏想到了一个新办法, 即把小机器人打散, 让传送门把它们吸 走。大伙儿都觉得小宏的计划绝妙无比,并全力协助小宏和大白反 击。每个人都各显神通,施展出自己的看家本领。大伙儿的团队作 战开始了……



Key Points 学习重点

- 1 get sucked up
- 2 Can you give us some cover?
- 3 sth. is getting . . .
- 4 on fire



预习本节精彩电影对白



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Okay, new plan! Forget the mask. Take out the bots!

They'll get sucked up into the portal.

小宏 好的,新计划!别管面具了,把小机器人打散!让传送门把它们吸走!

Wasabi Now! That is a plan! 芥末无疆 马上行动! 这才叫计划呢!

Hiro Honey, Fred, can you give us some cover?

小宏 哈妮、弗雷德, 你们俩掩护我们行吗?

Fred Like you have to ask . . .

弗雷德 这还用你说……

Honey Lemon Let's do this, Freddie!

哈妮柠檬 一起上啊,弗雷德!

Fred Smoke screen!

弗雷德 烟幕弹!

Hiro Ready . . . and dive!

小宏 预备……俯冲!

Wasabi Whoa, gravity is getting a little weird here guys. Wait, we

can use this! Green Blazes of Fury!

芥末无疆 哇,这里的重力有点反常。等等,我们可以用这招! 狂暴青刃!

Go Go Woman up!

神行御姐 成熟一点!

Fred Double-sign spin! Now my signs are on fire!

弗雷德 双牌旋转! 牌老弟发火了!

Honey Lemon Now that's a chemical reaction!

哈妮柠檬 这才叫化学反应呢!

Baymax Back Kick. Knife Hand. Round house. Hammer fist.

大白 后踢,掌刀,回旋踢,劈拳。

Callaghan This ends now!

卡拉汉 到此为止吧!

smoke 烟幕 / dive 俯冲 / blaze 火焰, 光辉 / chemical reaction 化学反应

Oral English 口语知识点



1 get sucked up 被吸入

suck 是"吮吸"的意思。get sucked up 意思是"被吸入",同义词组 是 be sucked into。如:

- ▶ The debris got sucked up by the tornado. = The debris was sucked into the tornado. 碎片被龙卷风卷入。
- ▶ Tiny plastic particles can get sucked by the cleaner. = Tiny plastic particles can be sucked into the cleaner. 微小的塑料粒可被吸入吸尘器。

2 Can you give us some cover? 你能掩护我们吗?

cover 作名词时,本意是"盖子",可延伸为"掩护;遮蔽处"。如:

- ► They provided adequate air cover for ground operations. 他们为地面作战提供了足够的空中掩护。
- ▶ They dropped bombs and ran for cover. 他们扔出炸弹跑向掩蔽处。

cover 还可以作动词, 意思是"覆盖", 表达"什么物体被某物覆盖"可以用 be covered with/by。如:

- ▶ The ground is covered with white snow. 地面覆盖着白雪。
- ▶ This village is covered by the communication net. 这个村庄已被通信网络覆盖。

3 on fire 着火, 起火

on fire 基本意思是"着火,起火",比喻义是"在兴头上;非常激动;盛怒"。如:

- ▶ The house was on fire. 房子着火了。
- ▶ Obviously, she is on fire. 很明显, 她很激动。

与 fire 有关的词组还有:

- ▶ set fire to = set sth. on fire 点火, 使……着火
- ▶ catch fire 着火, 烧着
- ▶ fire up (突然)生气,勃然大怒



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

be getting . . . 正在变得……



- 1. It is getting colder and colder. 天气正变得越来越冷。
- 2. It is getting dark. 天越来越黑。
- 3. Time is getting short. 时间越来越短。
- 4. The situation _____ worse and worse. 形势变得越来越糟糕。
- 5. Generating them ______ easier. 生产它们变得越来越容易。

2 2

be doing . . . 正在做 ······

- 1. He is swimming fast in the pool. 他正在泳池快速游泳。
- 2. She is watering flowers. 她正在浇花。
- 3. My sister is having breakfast with her friends. 我妹妹正在和朋友们一起吃早餐。
- 4. The poor boy ______. 可怜的小男孩在哭。

3

- A: It's getting cold. Put on more clothes. 天越来越凉了。多穿衣服。
- B: Don't worry about me, Mom. I am a big boy now. 妈妈你别担心我。我是个大男孩了。
- A: Good boy. 好孩子。

KEYS Step 1 4. is getting Step 2 4. is crying 5. is getting5. is cooking

Exercises 情境练习

A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。 Hiro Okay, new plan! Forget the mask. Take out the bots! They'll ① (被吸入) into the portal. Wasabi Now! That is a plan! Honey, Fred, can you give us some ______②(掩护)? Hiro Fred Like you have to ask . . . Honey Lemon Let's do this, Freddie! Smoke screen! Fred Ready . . . and ______ ③ (俯冲)! Hiro Whoa, gravity is getting a little weird here guys. Wait, we can Wasabi use this! Green Blazes of Fury! Go Go Woman up! Double-sign spin! Now my signs are ______ ④ (发火了)! Fred Honey Lemon Now that's a chemical reaction! Back Kick. Knife Hand. Round house. Hammer fist. Baymax Callaghan This ends now! B根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。 ①电子书籍正变得流行起来。 E-books ____ popular. ② 谁把房子点着了?

KEYS A ① get sucked up ② cover ③ dive ④ on fire B ① are getting ② on fire ③ are you doing

Who set the house _____

What _____ now?

③ 你正在做什么?

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

用英文说"反击":

- 1 It's time to fight back. 是时候反击了。
- 2 He attempted to counter his enemy's machination. 他试图反击敌人的阴谋。
- He is a counter puncher. 他是个善于反击的拳击手。
- The counterattack is feeble. 反击效果微弱。
- They played well on the counterattack. 他们在反击中表现得很好。
- 6 It's a crisp retort. 反击干脆利落。
- **7** She shot a retort to the misunderstanding. 她即刻对误解加以反击。
- 8 We shall fight back if the enemies attack. 如果敌人进攻,我们就反击。
- 9 Having bided their time, the enemy launches a counterattack. 等待良久, 敌人开始反击。



The Discovery of Abigail

发现艾比盖尔



格利告诉小宏不久后传送门会自行解体,情况将十分危急。于是, 小宏打算撤离。与此同时,大白侦测到了生命迹象,小宏不顾危 险,去查探生命迹象。那里处于休眠状态的人极有可能就是卡拉汉 的女儿艾比盖尔……



Key Points 学习重点

- 11 tear apart
- 2 Sb. need to . . .
- 3 She is still alive.



Screen English 情景再现

Hiro It's still on! We have to shut it down.

小宏 传送口还在运行! 我们得关了它。

Krei We can't! The containment field is failing. The portal is

going to tear itself apart!

格利 我们办不到!磁力约束场快崩溃了。传送门就要自行解体了!

Hiro We need to get out of here now! Baymax!

小宏 我们得马上离开! 大白!

Baymax My sensor is detecting signs of life.

大白 我的传感器侦测到了生命迹象。

Hiro What? 小宏 什么?

Baymax Coming from there. The life signs are female. She

appears to be in hyper-sleep.

大白 从那边过来的,是雌性生命迹象。她似乎进入了深度睡眠。

Hiro Callaghan's daughter. She is still alive?

小宏 卡拉汉的女儿。她还活着?

Callaghan Abigail . . . 卡拉汉 艾比盖尔······

Hiro Let's go get her. 小宏 我们去把她弄回来。

Krei The portal is destabilizing. You'll never make it.

格利 传送门正变得越来越不稳定。你们办不到的。

Hiro She's alive in there. Someone has to help. What do you

say, buddy?

小宏 她还活着。得有人救她才行。你怎么看,伙计?

Baymax Flying makes me a better health-care companion.

大白 飞行让我这个健康助手更称职了。

Oral English 口语知识点



1 tear apart 使……分裂; 把……弄乱

tear 基本意思是"撕"。tear apart 意思是"使……分裂; 把……弄乱"。如:

- ▶ War will tear families apart. 战争将使家人失散。
- ▶ Our friendship suddenly threatened to tear apart. 我们的友谊忽然濒临崩溃。

关于 tear 的另一个词组是 tear up, 意思是"撕碎"。如:

- ▶ He tore up the check. 他撕碎了支票。
- ▶ The company tore up the contract. 公司违约了。

2 She is still alive. 她还活着。

alive, live, living 和 lively 是容易混淆的几个词。 alive 意为 "活着的",可以指人或物,可用作表语、后置定语或宾补。如:

- No man alive is more hard-working than he. 在活着的人中,没有人比他更努力。
- ▶ He wanted to keep the fish alive. 他想让鱼活着。

living 意为"活着的",可用来指人或物,作定语或表语。另外,living 用作名词可意为"生计"。如:

- ▶ My first English teacher is still living . 我的英语启蒙老师仍健在。
- ▶ He makes a living as a freelance writer. 他靠自由写作谋生。

live 意为"活着的",通常指物,不指人,常用作定语放在名词的前面。 另外, live 还意为"实况转播的"。如:

- ▶ live coverage of the opening ceremony 开幕式的实况转播
- ▶ a live fish 一条活鱼

lively 意为"活泼可爱的;充满生气的",可用作定语、表语或宾补,可以指人或物。如:

- ▶ Jean is a lively girl. 琼是个活泼的女孩。
- ▶ In spring everything is lively here. 春天,这儿的一切都生机勃勃。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

sb. need to 需要······

STEP

- 1. You need to clean the house first. 你需要先打扫房间。
- We need to bring some food for the picnic.
 我们去野餐需要带些食物。
- 3. She needs to say sorry to her mother. 她需要向她妈妈道歉。
- 4. You _____ tell me the truth. 你需要跟我说实话。
- 5. They _____ get there before eight a.m. 他们需要早上八点之前到那里。

STEP

sth. need doing 某物需要被 ······

- 1. These clothes need washing. 这些衣服需要洗。
- 2. The car needs fixing up. 轿车需要修理。
- 3. The floor needs cleaning. 地板需要打扫。
- 4. The hair needs _____. 头发需要剪。
- 5. The phone needs _____. 手机需要充电。

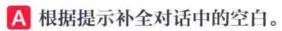
STEP

- A: Mom, could I play computer games for an hour? 妈妈, 我能玩一小时电脑游戏吗?
- B: You need to finish your homework first. 你需要先做完家庭作业。
- A: OK, I will. 好的, 我会的。

KEYS Step 1 4. need to Step 2 4. cutting 5. need to

5. charging

Exercises 情境练习



	Hiro	It's still on! We have to shut it down.
	Krei	We can't! The containment field is failing. The portal is going
		to①(自行解体)!
	Hiro	We need to get out of here now! Baymax!
	Baymax	My sensor is② (探測) signs of life.
	Hiro	What?
	Baymax	Coming from there. The life signs are female. She ③ (似乎) be in hyper-sleep.
	Hiro	Callaghan's daughter. She is still alive?
	Callaghan	Abigail
	Hiro	Let's go get her.
	Krei	The portal is ④ (不稳定). You'll never make it.
	Hiro	She's alive in there. Someone has to help. What do you say,
		buddy?
	Baymax	Flying makes me a ⑤ (更好的) health-care
		companion.
В	根据汉语	句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。
	①快点关	71!
	Come	on! the door!
	②你为什么	么把票撕碎?
	Why di	id you the ticket?
	③ 鱼还活:	着。
	The fish	n is still

KEYS A 1 tear itself apart 2 detecting 3 appears to 4 destabilizing 5 better B 1 Shut 2 tear up 3 alive

Cultural Tips 文化小贴士

1910年,捷克斯洛伐克作家卡雷尔·恰佩克在其科幻小说中首次使用"机器人"一词。此后的四十年间,人类对机器人的研究停留在理论层面,机器人的形态也比较简单,这与科幻小说里强大的机器人还有相当大差距。1959年,第一台工业机器人问世,为日后机器人的发展方向打下了基础。20世纪60年代中期开始,由于第二代传感器的出现,机器人开始向着人工智能进发。而后,机器人研究分流。欧美机器人方队研究开发促进大型工业化发展的机器人,而日本方队在仿真化机器人的道路上越走越远。日本还研究出了可以眨眼睛的机器人,面部轮廓基本做到了高仿真。随着中国人口老龄化现象日渐突出,中国对机器人的兴趣也日益增加。中国股市上有一段时间"机器人"概念被炒得火热。

日后机器人如何发展还得取决于科学技术的发展。随着科技进步,机器人的精度将越来越高。机器人将逐渐代替人类做一些体力劳动,人类将不得不向"高精尖"大脑的方向发展。



unit 40 Goodbye, Baymax 再见, 大白



大白带着小宏找到了艾比盖尔, 在返程时, 大白的推进器出问题 了,负荷不了三个人的体重。在这个时候,只能舍弃大白才能挽救 回小宏与艾比盖尔。大白决定用所剩的唯一动力将小宏他们送出 去,而自己将消失在这漩涡中……



Key Points 学习重点

- 11 up and over
- 2 Just grab hold.
- 3 There is still a way (that) I can . . .
- 4 Your health is my only concern.







Screen English 情景再现

Hiro Hurry! Come on, buddy, let's get her home. I'll guide you

out of here! Let's go! Veer right. Okay. To the left! Hard right! Up and over. Okay, level off. Easy. Woohoo! Nice

flying! Almost there!

小宏 快!来吧,伙计,咱们带她回家。我来给你引路!咱们走!往右。好的。往左!右急

转! 向上翻越。好的, 上升。稳住! 呜呼! 飞得好! 就快到了!

Hiro Baymax! Baymax!

小宏 大白! 大白!

Baymax My thrusters are inoperable.

大白 我的推进器不能运转了。

Hiro Just grab hold!

小宏 先抓紧我!

Baymax There is still a way I can get you both to safety. I cannot

deactivate until you say you are satisfied with your care.

大白 我还有一个办法能把你们安全送回。你说"我对护理很满意"我才能休眠。

Hiro N-n-no—wait! What about you?

小宏 不, 等一下! 那你怎么办?

Baymax You are my patient.

大白 你是我的病人。

Hiro Baymax!

小宏 大白!

Baymax Your health is my only concern.

大白 我唯一关心的是你的健康。

Hiro Stop—no—I'm gonna figure . . .

小宏 住手一不一我一定能想出……

Baymax Are you satisfied with your care?

大白 你对我的护理满意吗?

Hiro No! There's got to be another way. I'm not gonna leave

you here. I'll think of something.

小宏 不! 会有别的办法的。我不会把你留在这的。我一定能想出办法的。

guide 指引 / figure 计算

Oral English 口语知识点



11 up and over 向上翻越

up 表示"向上", over 表示"越过", up and over 表示"向上翻越"。 up 构成的词组还有:

▶ up and down 上上下下

▶ up and running 启动和运行

2 Just grab hold. 抓住了。

Just grab hold. 意思是"抓住了",是常用的口语。抓住某东西可以用 grab hold of . . .。grab hold of (抓,抓住)比 grab (抓)多一层"稳定住"的意思。如:

- ► Grab hold of the rope, then you will escape. 抓住绳子你就能得救了。
- ► The thief grabbed hold of my bag, but I noticed him. 小偷抓住了我的包,但是我注意到他了。
- ► An old man grabbed my money and ran away.

 一个老人抓了我的钱逃跑了。

3 Your health is my only concern. 我唯一关心的就是你的健康。

concern 作为名词表示"关心,关心的事"。如:

- ▶ Your happiness is my only concern. 我唯一关心的就是你的幸福。
- ▶ Your safety is my only concern. 我唯一关心的就是你的安全。

concern 还可以作为动词,表示"关心,使担忧"。如:

- ► My best friend's health concerns me. 我最好的朋友的身体状况让我担忧。
- ▶ I will never concern myself with politics. 我决不会关心政治。



Grammar Learning 语法知识点

There is still a way (that) I can . . . 我还有一个办法可以……

STEP

- There is still a way (that) I can help them. 我还有一个办法可以帮到他们。
- 2. There is still a way (that) I can fix it. 我还有一个办法可以修理它。
- 3. There is still a way (that) I can continue to do what I love. 我还有一个办法继续做我乐意做的事。
- 4. ______win. 我还有一个办法可以取胜。
- make it all work out in the end. 我还有一个办法最终解决这个问题。

There is still a way (for sb.) to . . . 还有个办法……

- 1. There is still a way to buy the house. 还有一个办法可以买房子。
- There's still a way to protect it from water damage. 还有一个办法可以保护它不受水冲击。
- There's still a way for you to make money. 还有一个办法让你赚钱。
- to change the future. 还有一个办法改变未来。
- _____to track it down. 还有一个办法追踪到它。

- A: There's still a way to make things right. 还有一个办法可以把事情办好。
- B: That's impossible. Nothing is working right. 不可能。没有办法了。
- A: I'm not giving up. 我不会放弃的。

KEYS

Step 1 4. There is still a way I can

Step 2 4. There is still a way

5. There is still a way I can

5. There is still a way

Exercises 情境练习

A 根据提示补全对话中的空白。 Hurry! Come on, buddy, let's get her home. I'll guide you out Hiro of here! Let's go! Veer right. Okay. To the left! Hard right! _____ ① (向上翻越). Okay, level off. Easy. Woohoo! Nice flying! Almost there! Hiro Baymax! Baymax! My thrusters are inoperable. Baymax Just grab hold! Hiro ______②(一个办法) I can get you both There is still Baymax to safety. I cannot deactivate until you say you are satisfied with your care. N-n-no-wait! What about you? Hiro Baymax You are my patient. Baymax! Hiro Baymax Hiro Stop—no, I'm gonna figure . . . Baymax Hiro No! There's got to be another way. I'm not gonna leave you here. I'll think of something. B 根据汉语句子将下面的英文句子补充完整。 ①我不会留下你一个人的。 alone. ②亲爱的,我不能失去你。 I can't

KEYS A ① Up and over ② a way ③ concern ④ satisfied with B ① I'm not gonna leave you ② lose you ③ I'm not gonna leave

③我不会因为他有问题而离开他的。

him because he has a problem.

Related Expressions 口语知识拓展

告别常用口语:

- 1 I have to go. 我得告辞了。
- 2 I should get going. 我应该走了。
- 3 Can't you stay any (a little) longer? 不再待会儿吗?
- 4 I won't keep you, then. Bye! 我就不留你了, 再见。
- **Thanks for dropping in.** 谢谢你来看我。
- **6** Don't forget to give me a ring. 别忘了给我来电话。
- **7** Take care. 多保重。
- 8 Let's keep in touch. 让我们保持联系。
- 9 Goodbye. 再见!
- 10 See you! 再见!
- 11 Catch you later. 回头见。
- 12 I look forward to seeing you soon. 我希望很快能够见到你。

(The End)

After the portal is shut down, Hiro takes Baymax's rocket fist to SFIT. He notices that the fist is holding something—it was the green nurse chip!

With this crucial chip, Hiro could rebuild Baymax. And that's exactly what he did . . .

With Baymax back, the team was complete.

If San Fransokyo needed them, they would be ready. They were Big Hero 6.



Document generated by Anna's Archive around 2023-2024 as part of the DuXiu collection (https://annas-blog.org/duxiu-exclusive.html).

Images have been losslessly embedded. Information about the original file can be found in PDF attachments. Some stats (more in the PDF attachments):

```
"filename": "MTQyOTU5NjMuemlw",
"filename_decoded": "14295963.zip",
"filesize": 28089917,
"md5": "1dd250d3861885f6b6e150cbbf33df16",
"header md5": "453e86c047321fcb44aefa48f37721c1",
"sha1": "94d4bab2a96ce0b2b2df6f9c04a6e4b04f56cf52",
"sha256": "6e1cb7f36bdf5582a1fa80d6c3af1098cc3d858d4ed7e82190172f782117031f",
"crc32": 835393039,
"zip_password": "",
"uncompressed_size": 35977495,
"pdg_dir_name": "\u770b\u8fea\u58eb\u5c3c\u7535\u5f71\u5b66\u82f1\u6587\u8d85\u80fd\u9646\u6218\u961f_14295963",
"pdg_main_pages_found": 241,
"pdg_main_pages_max": 241,
"total_pages": 253,
"total_pixels": 955662848,
"pdf_generation_missing_pages": false
```